ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

ISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

HISTORICAL

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

CONTAINING

Accidence and Word-Formation.

BY THE

REV. RICHARD MORRIS, LL.D.,

HONORARY M.A. OXFORD,

PRESIDENT OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY, LONDON,

Author of " Historical Outlines of English Accidence,"
Editor of " Old English Homilies," " Cursor Mundi," etc.

SECOND EDITION.

PREFACE.

THE present treatise has been drawn up at the urgent request of numerous teachers, who asked for an easier and more elementary work than my "Historical Outlines of English Accidence," published some two years ago. I have endeavoured to the best of my ability to produce a short historical grammar that might be advantageously used as an introduction to my larger book.

I have not, however, made a new book by cutting down and compressing the old one. These "Elementary Lessons" constitute an entirely indepen-

dent work, with many peculiarities of arrangement
that at once distinguish it from the "Accidence."
A reference to the earlier chapters alone will at once
show how very different the two books are. The
illustrative examples scattered throughout the present
work are for the most part new, very few of them
having been quoted elsewhere.

I trust that, to those engaged in the higher
education of boys and girls, these lessons will
prove helpful in promoting a more thorough know-
ledge of our "mother tongue," the study of which
has of late years been put on a better footing, and
has acquired a distinct, and by no means an un-
important, place in the curriculum of a liberal
education

Syntax is not treated of in this volume, but I hope
before long to be able to get out both a small and
a large book on this important subject.

My best thanks are due to my kind friend, the Rev. W. W. Skeat, for his assistance in revising the proof-sheets. At his suggestion I have adopted the classification of the periods of the Language on p 33, and the mnemonics on p. 48

CONTRACTIONS.

Allit. = Alliterative.
Anat Mel = Anatomy of Melancholy
C T. = Canterbury Tales.
Dan = Danish
De Reg = De Regimine Principum
C Mundi = Cursor Mundi,
    C = Cotton MS.
    F. = Fairfax MS
    G = Göttingen MS
    T = Trinity MS
E E = Early English.
Fr. = French
Ger = German
Gest Rom. = Gesta Romanorum.
Gr = Greek
Icel = Icelandic
Kath = St Katherine
Lat = Latin
M E. = Middle English.
N Fr = Norman-French.
O E = Old English
O E Misc = O E Miscellany.
O E Hom = Old English Homilies.
O Fr. = Old French
O H Ger = Old High German
P of C = Pricke of Conscience
P of Pl = Pastime of Pleasure
P P   P   R

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER III

ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

CHAPTER I.

I.—Relation of English to the Languages of Europe and Asia.

ENGLISH BELONGS TO THE INDO-EUROPEAN FAMILY
OF LANGUAGES.

1. Most of the nations of Europe, and some in
Asia, (India, Persia, Afghanistan,) have sprung from
one common stock, and are therefore related to one
another, by blood and by language.

2. These nations philologists have called the **Indo-
European** or **Aryan** family.

The ancestors of the Aryan race once lived to-
gether in the highlands north of the Himâlaya moun-
tains.

A time came, of which history gives us no account,
when the old Aryan tribes separated from each other,
and left their ancient abode to seek new settlements.

Two great tribes, the old Hindus and the Persians, crossed the Himâlaya mountains, and found new homes on the banks of the Ganges and Indus, from whence they soon spread over Hindostan, Persia, &c.

The rest of the Aryan tribes, at different times, and at considerable intervals, travelled westward and came into Europe.

3. The first Aryan comers were the **Kelts**, who settled in parts of Germany, Italy, Spain, Gaul, and the British Isles. Their dialects still survive in Wales, the Highlands of Scotland, Ireland, the Isle of Man, and in Armorica or Brittany.

The **Kelts** were driven out of their settlements in Italy, and pushed further westward by the advance of the **Italic** tribes.

About the same time the peninsula of Greece was peopled by the **Hellenic** or **Grecian** tribes.

Next came the **Teutons**, who took up their abode in Germany and Scandinavia. The last Aryan settlement was made by the **Lithuanians** and **Slavonians**.

The Slavonians gradually spread themselves over Russia, Bohemia, Poland, &c.

The Lithuanians settled on the Baltic coast in Prussia, Livonia, and Lithuania.

4. Of the people living in Europe the Fins, Lapps, Esths, Basques, Hungarians, and Turks, do not belong to the Indo-European family.

5 TABLE OF INDO-EUROPEAN LANGUAGES.

I. Hindu
1. Sanscrit (dead)
2. Hindi, Hindustani, Bengali, Mahratti (all descendants from the Sanscrit)
3. Cingalese (language of Ceylon)
4. Gypsy dialect.

II. Iranian
1. Zend (the old language of Persia)
2. Persian

III. Keltic
1. Bas Breton or Armorican.
2. Welsh
3. Erse or Irish
4. Gaelic or Highland Scotch.
5. Manx

IV. Italic or Romanic
1. Latin (and old Italian Dialects, Oscan and Umbrian)
2. The Romance dialects which have sprung from Latin.
  (a) Italian
  (b) French
  (c) Spanish and Portuguese
  (d) Roumansch.
  (e) Wallachian

V. Hellenic or Grecian
1. Ancient Greek, with its various dialects, Attic, Ionic, Doric, &c
2. Modern Greek

VI. Teutonic
1. Low - German —English, Dutch, Flemish
2. Scandinavian —Icelandic, Swedish, Danish, Norwegian
3. High-German —Modern German.

VII. Lettic
1. Old Prussian (dead).
2. Lettish

VIII. Slavonic
1. Russian
2. Polish.
3. Bohemian

B 2

II. Relation of English to the Teutonic Group.

ENGLISH IS A TEUTONIC LANGUAGE, AND BELONGS
TO THE LOW-GERMAN DIALECTS.

. 6. The Teutonic group is that with which we are
more nearly connected, English being one of its most
important members.

There are three great divisions of the Teutonic
people, (1) Low-German, (2) Scandinavian,
(3) High-German.

The Low-Germans formerly lived near the low-
lying lands, by the mouths of the rivers Rhine, Weser,
and Elbe.

. The Scandinavians, probably an off-shoot from
the Low-Germans, settled in Norway, Sweden,
Denmark, and at a later period in Iceland

The High-Germans lived inland, in the highlands
south of Germany (Bavaria, &c)

7. The word *Dutch*, now only applied to the
people of Holland, formerly denoted all German-
speaking people. The Germans still call themselves
Deutsche, and their language *Deutsch.*

8 The word *Dutch* is an adjective signifying national,[1] and
was the name by which the old Teutons called themselves in
contradistinction to other people, whose language they were
unable to understand. They styled themselves the (intelligible)

---

[1] Cp O H Ger *diot*, O E. *theod* people; O H Germ
diutisc, O E *theodisc* of the people, popular.

people, but called others, as the Romans, and the Kelts in Britain, *Walsch* and *Welsh*

Ancient nations gave themselves polite names, b... s... c... ... ... their name from *Slavo,* a word or renown.

9. **English** belongs to the Low-German division of the Teutonic languages. Its nearest living relations are *Dutch* (the language of H... ... / ... ... the court language of Brabant), *Frisian* (between the Scheldt and Jutland and on the islands near the shore), *Plat-Deutsch* (on the Baltic coast), *Gothic* (the language of the Goths in the ancient province of Dacia) is a *dead* language. The Gothic translation of the Gospels by *Wulfila* or Ulfilas (in the fourth century) is the oldest monument of Teutonic literature extant The *old Saxon* is also a dead language ; it was once spoken between the Rhine and the Elbe in Munster, Essen, and Cleves.

10. TABLE OF TEUTONIC LANGUAGES.

I. **Low-German** ●	1	Gothic (dead).
	2	Old Saxon (dead)
	3	English and Lowland-Scotch.
	4	Frisian
	5	Dutch
	6	Flemish.
II. **Scandinavian**	1	Icelandic.
	2	Swedish.
	3	Danish
	4	Norwegian.
III **High-German**		Modern High-German, with its older stages, Middle High-German, and Old High-German.

CHAPTER II.

History of the English Language.

Origin of the English.

11. The English language was brought into Britain about the middle of the fifth century by Low-German tribes, commonly known as Angles, Saxons, and Jutes (Frisians).

, These Teutonic invaders were known to the Britons as *Saxons*, but they called themselves *English* (Æng-lisc), and their new home *England* (Ængla-land, the land of the *Angles*).

The term Angle or Engle is supposed by some to take its name from the district of Angeln in the Duchy of Schleswig.

12. The *Frisians* or *Jutes* settled in Kent; the *Angles* in the north, east, and central parts of Britain; and the *Saxons* in the south and west parts of the island (in Essex, Sussex, Wessex, &c.)

The Lowlands of Scotland once formed part of the old Northumbrian kingdom, hence *Lowland-Scotch* is an *English dialect*.

Foreign Elements in English.

ENGLISH WAS ORIGINALLY AN INFLECTED AND UN-
MIXED LANGUAGE, BUT IS NOW AN UNINFLECTED
AND COMPOSITE LANGUAGE.

13. The language that was brought into Britain by
the Low-German invaders, was an inflected and syn-
thetic language, like its congener Modern German, and
its more distant relatives, Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin.

Though modern English has lost most of the older
grammatical endings, and has been reduced to an
analytical language (like Danish, French, and Persian),
it still belongs, by virtue of its descent, to the family
of inflected languages.

14. The English language brought over by the
Angles, Saxons, &c., was an *unmixed* language.

There were no non-Teutonic elements in its vo-
cabulary.

It is now a composite or mixed language, having
adopted words from various nations with whom the
English people have had dealings at different times

The foreign elements in English may therefore be
treated historically.

I.—The Keltic Element in English.

15. The English invaders of Britain displaced the
old Keltic inhabitants, and did not largely mix with
them ; their language was, therefore, but little in-
fluenced by the speech of the British tribes. It affected
the spoken far more than the written language, for from

the ninth to the twelfth century English literature
furnishes but few examples of borrowed Keltic terms.
The words of this period are *barrow* (mound), *brock,
breeches, clout, crock, kiln, cradle, mattock, pool.*

   In the literature of the thirteenth and fourteenth
centuries we find more frequent traces of Keltic terms,
of which the following still survive :—*boast, boisterous,
bribe, cam* (crooked), *crag, dainty, darn, daub, fleam,
glen, havoc, kiln, mop, pillow.*

   16. The Norman-French contained some few Keltic terms
borrowed from the old Gaulish , some of these found their way
into English, as : *bag, barren, bargain, barter, barrel, basin,
basket, bonnet, bucket, bran, button, chemise, car, cart, dagger,
gravel, gown, harness, marl, mitten, motley, osier, pot, rogue,
ribbon, varlet, vassal, wicket.*

   17. A few words, the names of Keltic things, are of recent
i: 'r.' .·' r'· r۰, ۰r.n٠·٠i, ٠٠٠d, i٠٠٠ b٠·.c.n, ٠٠٠٠, ٠٠ ,٠٠٠٠١٠· ٠٠٠
i'۰, ٠ ٠٠٠·. ٠,٠,٠١ tit٠, ٠٠ ١٠٠٠١٠ ,٠d٠٠ ١٠٠π, , ٠٠٠١٠٠٠١٠٠, ٠٠٠, ٠٠٠٠٠٠,
whiskey.

   18. The oldest geographical names are of course
Keltic, especially names of rivers and of mountains ;
as, *Avon, Ouse, Esk, Exe, Usk, Thames, Derwent,
Dee, &c., Pen-y-Gent, Helvellyn, &c., Aberdeen, Kent,
Dover, &c.*

II.—The Scandinavian Element in English.

   19. Towards the end of the eighth century (A.D.
787) the Northmen of Scandinavia (Denmark, Norway,
Sweden, Iceland) commonly known as *Danes*, made
descents upon the East coasts of England, Scotland,
the Hebrides, and Ireland, as well as in other parts of
Europe.

In the ninth century they obtained a permanent
footing in the North and East parts of England:
and in the eleventh century a Danish dynasty was
established on the throne for nearly thirty years
(A.D. 1016–1042).

The Scandinavians were a Teutonic people and
their language very closely resembled the old English
speech. It is, therefore, no easy matter to determine
the exact number of words introduced by the old
Northmen. Many of the borrowed words have taken
an English form, so as to be no longer distinguished
as pure Scandinavian. The spoken language was af-
fected by the Danes far more than the written language,
especially in Northumberland, Durham, Yorkshire,
Lancashire, Cumberland, Lincoln, and Norfolk, where
many Danish words are still to be found. In the
eleventh and twelfth centuries only a few Scandinavian
words found their way into the written language, such
words are, *aren*, are, *by*, a town; *fel*, a hill; *til*, to.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries they be-
came more common and are easily discernible ; many
of these still survive, as *blunt*, *bole* (of a tree), *bound*
(for a journey), *busk*, *buckle-to* (buskle), *cake*, *call*, *cast*,
curl, *cat*, *dairy*, *die*, *daze*, *droop*, *fellow*, *fist*, *fro*, *froward*,
gab, *gast*, *ill*, *irk-* (some), *kid*, *kindle*, *loft*, *low* (flame),
neave (fist), *muck*, *odd*, *puck*, *plough*, *root*, *same*, *scold*,
sly, *shy*, *tarn* (lake), *ugly* (E E. *ugge*, to fear), *weak*, *gar*
(to cause, make), *greet* (to weep), are used by Spenser.

20 Very many Norse words once very common in old Northern
writers have gone out of use, or have become provincial, as, *at*,
to (before infinitives) *beck* (stream), *scrr* (scar), *last* (fault), *ht*,
(-thun), *layte* (to seek), *mun* (must, shall), *trine* (to go), *tyne* (to
lose), *tynsel* (loss), *throp* or *thorp* (town), &c

21. Many names of places ending in *by* (town), *fell*
(hill) *byrk* (stream), *firth* (wood), *garth* (circles &c),
indicate British settlements, *forth* is the Scandinavian
fjord (cp. Milford, Waterford)

22. The Danish invasions did much to unsettle the
inflexions in the North of England. Before the Nor-
man-French conquest we find the *n* of the infinitive
falling off, and the verb in the third person singular
present indicative ending in *es* instead of *eth*. The
use of the plural suffix in *as* was frequently extended
to nouns that originally formed the plural by the suffix
a or *u*. The dialects of the North and North-East of
England in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries are
almost as flexionless as modern English. These parts
of England were the last to come under the influence
of Norman-French.

III.—The Latin Element in English.

1. LATIN OF THE FIRST PERIOD: connected with
the Roman Invasion.

23. The Roman occupation of Britain for nearly
four centuries (from A.D. 43 to A.D. 426) left its traces
in the few names of places, as · *Chester, Gloucester,
Dorchester, Exeter, Stratton, Lincoln*, &c.
Fortified towns and great roads became familiar
objects to the old English settlers in Britain ; so *castra*,
a camp, and *strata*, a street, soon passed into English
under the forms *ceastre =* chester, and *strǣt =* street.
Probably *portus*, a port, as in *Ports*-mouth, was known
to the oldest English. Cp. O.E *port-gerefa*, a *port-reeve.*

2. LATIN OF THE SECOND PERIOD: St. Augustine's Mission.

24. The introduction of Christianity about the end of the sixth century (A.D. 596) brought England into connection with Rome, and during the four following centuries a large number of Latin words became familiar to educated Englishmen.

The words introduced into the language during this period were, for the most part, connected with the Church, its services and observances, as : *ancor*, hermit (anchoreta) ; *postol*, apostle (apostolus) ; *biscop*, bishop (episcŏpus) ; *calc*, chalice (calix) ; *clustor*, cloister (claustrum) ; *tunic*, tunic (tunica).

(1) A few foreign articles now came in for the first time, and retained their Latin names.

(1) A few articles of *food*, *clothing*, *ornaments*, &c. : *butor*, butter (bŭtȳrum) ; *cise*, cheese (caseus) ; *pæl*, pall (pallium) ; *tunic*, tunic (tunica).

(2) *Trees and Plants* : *cedar*, cedar (cedrus) ; *fic*, fig (ficus) ; *peru*, pear (pirum) ; *persuc*, peach (persicum) ; *lactuce*, lettuce (lactuca) ; *lilie*, lily (lilium) ; *pipor*, pepper (piper) ; *pisa*, pease (pisum), &c.

(3) *Animals* : *mere-greot*, pearl (margaritta) ; *camel*, camel (camelus) ; *culufre*, dove (columba) ; *leo*, lion (leo) ; *pard*, leopard (pardus) ; *ostre*, oyster (ostrea) ; *pawa*, peacock (pavo) ; *truht*, trout (tructa) ; *turtle*, turtle (turtur) ; *olfend* (camel), a corruption of *elephant*.

(4) *Weights*: *pund*, pound (pondus), *ynce*, inch, ounce (uncia), &c.

(5) *Miscellaneous*: *candel*, candle (candela), *disc*, disk (discus), *culter*, coulter (culter), *marman* -(stan), marble stone (marmor); *tæfl*, table (tabula), *mynet*, mint (moneta).

,3. LATIN OF THE THIRD PERIOD: introduced by
the Norman Conquest.

25. The Norman Conquest in 1066 was a remarkable event in the history of the English nation, and affected the language more than anything that happened either before or after it.

When the Normans made themselves masters of England they attempted to spread their language throughout the island. French became the language of the court and of the nobility: of the clergy and of literature: of the universities and schools: of the courts of law, and of Parliament: but French did not succeed in displacing English, for the great body of the common people refused to give up their mother-tongue, and from time to time there arose men who wrote in English for the benefit of those who knew nothing of French or Latin. After a while the Normans, being in the minority, mingled with the English and became one people   While the coalescence was taking place (in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries), there was a mingling of the two languages, and many French words found their way first into the spoken and afterwards into the written language.

After the distinction between Normans and English died out, Norman-French degenerated into a mere

provincial dialect and at last ceased to be spoken in England.

In 1349 boys no longer learnt their Latin through the medium of French.

In 1362 (the 36th of Edward III.) English superseded French and Latin in the courts of law.

Certain political circumstances helped to bring about these changes, such as the loss of Normandy in John's reign, and the French wars of Edward III. (A.D. 1339).

Influence of Norman-French upon the Vocabulary of the English Language.

26. The Norman-French was essentially a Latin language, and the Norman Conquest added to English another very considerable Latin element

The introduction of French words was the work of some time, and went on gradually from the eleventh to the fourteenth century.

They came into the written language at first sparingly. In the Saxon Chronicle from 1086 to 1154, we find less than twenty Norman-French words —*court, dub* (1086), *peace* (1135), *treasure, prison, justice, rent, privilege, miracle* (1137), *standard, empress, countess, tower* (1140), *procession* (1154). A little before A D. 1200 we find, *baron, chemise, custom, penance, palfrey, sot, jugler, master, mercy, manner, poor, riches, robbery, sacrament, charity, easy, font, sermon, passion, wait, saint, poverty, large, mantle, pride, service, spouse, taper, turn,* &c.

Even at this early period we find hybrids: *spus-had* = marriage; *crisme-cloth, maisterling* = prince;

bispused, bespoused = married; *almesful* = charitable,
&c.

In Layamon's Brut (A.D. 1205), we find in the two
versions less than one hundred words of French
origin, among which we note especially, *admiral,
abbey, annoy, attire, astronomy, camp, change, chattel,
chieftain, close, country, cope, crown, cross, cry, delay
duke, escape, espy, false, fool, foul, grace, guile, guise,
hardily, honour, hostage, hurt, ire, cable, legion, mes-
senger, machine, male, mile, mountain, nun, nunnery,
pilgrim, post, power, to roll, school, scorn, senator, serve,
serving, sire, suffer, use,*[1] &c.

27 Numerous French words were introduced into
the language during the thirteenth and fourteenth
centuries, by those native writers who for the first time
translated religious treatises, poems, and romances,
from the French into English. These compensated
for the original imperfections of our language in
religious, ethical, philosophical, and poetical terms;
besides giving us numerous words referring to war,
chivalry, and the chase. Towards the middle of the
fourteenth century, French influence upon the lan-
guage was at its height.

28. Chaucer has been wrongfully accused of cor-
rupting the written language of his day, by fresh im-
portation of Romance words. In his translations he
doubtless was compelled to employ many new terms
for ideas and things, as yet unfamiliar to his country-
men; but his vocabulary is not more deeply tinged

---

[1] See the long list of French words in the "Ancren Riwle,"
"King Alexander" ("Hist. Outlines," pp. 339–344).

with French words than other writers of the fourteenth
century. He, no doubt gave his authority to words
already in general use, and rejected others in favour
of native terms, and thus did much to fix the native
vocabulary, and to stop the increasing inflow of bor-
rowed words. It is said that not more than perhaps
one hundred Romance words used by Chaucer in his
various works have become obsolete.

"It is a great but very widely spread error to suppose
that the influx of French words in the fourteenth
century was due alone to poetry and other branches
of pure literature. The Law, which now first became
organized into a science, introduced many borrowed
terms from the nomenclature of Latin and French
jurisprudence; the glass-worker, the enameller, the
architect, the brass-founder, the Flemish clothier, and
the other handicraftsmen, whom Norman tastes and
luxury invited, or domestic oppression expelled from
the Continent, brought with them the vocabularies of
their respective arts, and Mediterranean commerce—
which was stimulated by the demand for English wool,
then the finest in Europe—imported from the harbours
of a sea where the French was the predominant lan-
guage, both new articles of merchandize and the
French designation for them. The sciences too,
medicine, physics, geography, alchemy, astrology, all
of which became known to England chiefly through
French channels, added numerous specific terms to
the existing vocabulary; and very many of the words
first employed in English writings as a part of the
technical phraseology of these various arts and know-
ledges, soon passed out into the domain of common
life, in modified or untechnical senses, and thus became

incorporated into the general tongue of society and of books."[1]

29. But when the English vocabulary was thus increased by this great influx of French terms, many of the native words went out of use. Thus, if we take a thirteenth-century version of the Creed, we find *skenned*, conceived; *spined was*, suffered; *lihte*, descended; *steih*, ascended; *imennesse of haluwen*, communion of saints; *ariste*, resurrection. In a fourteenth-century copy (A D 1340) of the Lord's Prayer we find *yeldinges*, trespasses; *yelderes*, trespassers; *vondinge*, temptation; *vri*, deliver. Wickliffe has *dettis*, *dettour*, *delyvere*.[2] Tyndal (1526) has *treaspasses*, *treaspas* (verb) for *dettis* and *dettours*.

Many good old English words have gone out since Chaucer's time, having been replaced by Romance and Latin terms.

Influence of Norman-French upon the Grammar of English.

30. No language gives up its grammar and adopts a new system of borrowed inflexions for its nouns, adjectives, and verbs, &c.

It will part with the greater portion of its original vocabulary, and yet leave grammatical forms almost untouched. Norman-French words found an easy

---

[1] Marsh, "History and Origin of English Language," p. 66.

[2] Some older versions of the Pater Noster have *gultes* and *gultere*, trespasses; and trespassers; *shide* (shield) for *fri* (free).

entrance into our language, but the influence of four centuries only served to modify and to diminish English inflexions, not to eradicate them by the substitution of new forms.

The Danish invasion had unsettled the language in many parts of the country, and in the eleventh century we see a disposition to adopt a less inflexional structure, and in the earlier periods. Nearly every nation of the Teutonic family has, by the loss of inflexions, become almost as uninflexional as our own[1] The tendency of all highly inflected or synthetical languages is to become analytical and non-inflexional, so that, had there been no Norman Conquest, we should have followed the ordinary growth of language, in replacing the older grammatical endings by the use of relational words, as, *prepositions, auxiliaries,* &c

Doubtless then the Norman invasion caused this change to take place more rapidly and generally, than it would otherwise have done, but even the slight direct modifications here spoken of are not found much before the fourteenth century.

31. The power of forming new words by derivation from Teutonic roots was to a certain extent checked by the introduction of so large a number of foreign words.

Instead of making a new word by the old and formerly familiar method of attaching a suffix to a living native root, it became far easier to adopt a term ready made.

---

[1] *German* and *Icelandic* have lost much less than other Teutonic languages.

C

Cp. O.E. *thanc* (thought); *thanc-ol* (thoughtful); *thancful, thancwurth* (grateful); *thancolmod* (prudent); *thancwurthlice* (gratefully), &c.

32. Some Norman-French suffixes replaced English ones.

In the fourteenth century we find the modern **-ess** taking the place of *-en*, and *-ster*. Cp. *dwelleresse* in Wicliffe for *dwellstere*, *goddesse* (Chaucer) for Old English *gydin;* and the modern forms *bond-age, till-age, hindr-ance, knave-ry, wondr-ous,*[1] &c.

33. Some substitutes for inflexion came into use. The preposition *of* replaced the genitive *-s;* the comparison of Adjectives was expressed sometimes by **more** and **most** instead of *-er* and *-est*. Many Romance adjectives were inflected in the plural after the Norman-French method, as *wateres principales, capitalles letres;* we also find *children innocens* (La Tour Laundry, p. 104).

The Old English method of forming a plural adjective was by adding *-an* (*-en*), *-e.*

When used substantively, the Romance adjective formed its plural by the addition of *-s*, and the Old English by *-e.* Cp. "He *us* tekth to knawe the *great-e* thinges vram the *littl-e*, the *precio*use-s vram the *vile-s.*"[2] To this method we owe the early forms *gentles, familiars,* which became the models for many others, as "our *delicates* and *wantons*" (Holland's "Pliny," p. 603); the *yellowes* = the jaundice

---

[1] See "Historical Outlines," p 39.

[2] He teaches us to know the great things from the little ones, the precious things from the vile ones.

(Hollinshed), "*yonges*" = young ones (L. Andrewe), *calms, shallows, worthies*, &c.

The use of Auxiliary Verbs (*have, shall, will*) became very common after the Norman Conquest.

34. The earliest and the greatest change was upon the pronunciation.

All the older vowel endings -*a*, -*o*, -*u*, became -*and* the terminations -*an*, -*as*, -*ath*, -*on*, -*od*, became -*en*, -*es*, -*eth*, -*en*, -*ed*

After a time (fourteenth century) the final *e* fell off altogether, or was retained as an orthographical expedient. Cp. O E *nama*, name, *steorra*, M.E. *sterre*, star ; O E *suna*, M.E. *sone* = son, &c.

35. This change of final vowels, simple as it was, served to weaken most of the inflexional forms.

It also helped to break down the old distinction of grammatical gender.

Thus the suffix -a was a sign of the masculine, and -e of the feminine gender ; but when *webb-a* (m), *webb-e* (f), a weaver, came to be represented by the same form, *webbe*, then the final -e, if retained as a sign of gender, must be limited either to the masculine or feminine. An attempt was made to restrict it to the masculine, as *hunt-e*, a hunter, *spus-e*, a bridegroom ; but *webbe*, a female weaver, occurs in "Piers Plowman" We now use *webster*.

We also find it frequently used up to the middle of the fourteenth century, to denote the *agent*. (Cp. the restricted sense of the old fem. -*ster*, *see* p. 63). We can easily understand how *widuwa* (a widow-er) dropped out of use, leaving *widuwe* (a widow), from

c 2

which a new masculine had to be formed; just as
in the sixteenth century we find *spouse* (m), and
spousesse (f) for the twelfth century *spus* (m), and
spuse (f).

36. After a time a few fresh vowel sounds found
their way into the language, as **u**, in *duly*; **oi** in *boil*;
the **a** in *fame*; **ei** in *aisle*.

37. Guttural sounds were softened down or became
mute.

(1) Initial and final **c** (**k**) became **ch**, **tch**, as O E.
cild = child; *godlic* = *godlich* (godly); *streccan* =
streche (stretch); **sc** became **sh**; *sceal* = shall; *fisc*
=fish; **g** became **i** (**y**), **w**, *geleáfa* = *ileafe* (be-lief);
hand-ge-weorc = handy-work; *fugol* = fowl; *dæg* =
day; *lagu* = law.

In some instances **cg** has become **j** (**ge**, **dge**) *cring-
an* = to cringe; *brycg* (M E. *brigge*) = bridge.

(2) **c**, **ch**, **h**, **g**, have disappeared or become mute,
ic = *ich* = *ih* = I , *cniht* (M.E. *knicht*) = knight;
heah = high; *dirtig* = dirty; &c. Cp. the falling
away of **h** in *hláf* = loaf; *hring* = ring; *hnecca* =
neck; **k**, and **g**, before **n**, have become mute : *cneow*=
knee; *gnagan* = to gnaw. Cp. the weakening of **l**
before **f** and **k** in *calf*, *walk*, &c.

J (jet), **z**, **sh** (sure), **zh** (azure), were sounds that
came into use after the Norman Conquest.

38. A new accentuation was introduced by the
Normans. The old English accent like that of other
Teutonic nations was upon the root syllable as *un-
fastli'-ful-ly*, *un-be-liev'-ing*, but in French there was a
slight stress of the voice upon the final syllable.

When French words were first adopted they retained their original accent, thus *reward* and *voyage* became *reasón* and *voyáge* before they were accented as *réason* and *vóyage*.

In the written poetical language of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find words of pure English origin ending in *-ing*, *-liche*, *-ness*, receiving an accent on the final syllable. Chaucer rhymes *gladnésse* with *distrésse*. But an attempt was made even as early as Chaucer's time to make borrowed words conform to the native accentuation, and in the "Canterbury Tales" we find *mórtal*, *témpest*, &c. as well as *mortál*, *tempést*, &c.

4. LATIN OF THE FOURTH PERIOD: introduced by the Revival of Learning

39. The large number of French words brought into the language by the Norman invasion, prepared the way for the introduction of fresh Latin words, through the impetus given to learning and literature by the revival of learning in England at the beginning of the sixteenth century.

There are then *two* distinct classes of Latin words in English.[*] (1) Those that have come indirectly from Latin through French. (2) Those that have come directly from the Latin.

Words of the first class have undergone much change in spelling, and their origin is often obscured; those of the second class have suffered but little alteration, and their origin is easily recognised.

Latin.	Words coming from Latin through Norman-French	Words coming directly from the Latin
captivum	caitiff	captive
dilatare	delay	dilate
factum	feat	fact
fragilem	frail	fragile
hospitile	hotel	hospital
lectionem	lesson	lection
pungentem	poignant	pungent
regalem	royal	regal
securum	sure	secure
separare	sever	separate

40 Under the influence of learning, many words coming indirectly from the Latin have taken a more classical form, as, *assaute*, *dette*, *defaut*, *aventure*, *vitaille*, have been altered to *assault*, *debt*, *default*, *adventure*, *victual*, &c.

41. The influx of Latin and Greek words, by means of learning and education, lasted from the time of Henry VII. to the end of the reign of Charles II. Many Latin words when first introduced into our language altered their termination, as, *splendidious*, *mulierosity*, but others were adopted in their original form, as, *chylus* = chyle, *classis* = class, *precipitum* = precipice ; *mummia* = mummy ; so too with Greek words, *parallelon* = parallel ; *ecstasis* = ecstasy ; *epocha* = epoch

As the origin of these loans was well known, we can understand why *compact*, *convict*, &c came into use before *compacted* and *convicted* as passive participles.

42. A great number of classical words found their
way into the written language which never passed into
general usage, as, *intenervate*, to soften; *deturpated*,
deformed (Jeremy Taylor); *ludibundness, sanguinolency*
(Henry More), &c.

During the reigns of Elizabeth, James, and Charles
I. fine writing and speaking were greatly affected, but
fortunately many true lovers of their noble mother-
tongue raised a cry against the pedantic use of scho-
lastic or ink-horn terms as they were then called, and
thereby did something to stop the tendency to inun-
date the language with long and useless words.

Thomas Wilson writing in 1553 says, "Among
other lessons this should first be learned, that we
never affect any strange ink-horn terms, but to speak
as is commonly received, neither seeking to be over
fine, nor yet living over careless, using our speech as
most men do, and ordering our wits as the fewest
have done. Some seek so far for outlandish English,
that they forget altogether their mother's language,
and I dare swear this, if some of their mothers were
alive they were not able to tell what they say, and
yet these fine English clerks will say they speak in
their mother tongue, if a man should charge them with
counterfeiting the king's English." Gill in his *Lago-
nomia Anglica*, published in 1619, thus notices what
he calls the "new mange in our speaking and writing."
" O harsh lips, I now hear all around me such words
as *common, vices, envy, malice;* even *virtue, study,
justice, pity, mercy, compassion, profit, commodity, colour,
grace, favour, acceptance.* But whither, I pray, in all
the world have you banished those words which our
forefathers used for these new-fangled ones ? Are our

words to be exiled like our citizens? Is the new
barbaric invasion to extirpate the English tongue? O
ye Englishmen, on you, I say, I call, in whose veins
that blood flows, retain, what yet remains of
our native speech, and, whatever vestiges of our fore-
fathers are yet to be seen, on these plant your foot-
steps." Butler ("Hudibras," I. 1. 91) speaks of :—

> " A Babylonish dialect,
> Which learned pedants much affect ·
> 'Twas English cut on Greek or Latin,
> Like fustian heretofore on satin."

43. There are a few miscellaneous Romance words
that have come into the language chiefly during the
Tudor and Stuart periods.

(1) **Spanish terms.**—" During the latter half of
the sixteenth century, and the first half of the seven-
teenth century," the Spanish language "was very widely
known in England, indeed far more familiar than it ever
since has been.

" The wars in the Low Countries, the probabili-
ties at one period of a match with Spain, the fact that
Spanish was almost as serviceable at Brussels, at Milan,
at Naples, and for a time at Vienna, not to speak of
Lima and Mexico, as at Madrid itself, and scarcely
less indispensable, the many points of contact, friendly
and hostile, of England with Spain for well nigh a
century—all this had conduced to an extended know-
ledge of Spanish in England.   It was popular at
Court, Queen Mary and Queen Elizabeth were both
excellent Spanish scholars. . . . . . The statesman
and scholars of the time were rarely ignorant of the
language."—TRENCH.

Many Spanish words end in -ado, -ade, -dor, -illo, -oon: as armada, barricade, bravado, desperado, eldorado, grenade, parade, tornado, corridor, matador, battledor, armadillo, flotilla, peccadillo, punctilio (originally puntillo), vanilla, maroon, picaroon, paragon. Other familiar terms are alligator (el-lagarto),[1] buffalo, cannibal, cargo, cigar, cochineal, crusade, don, duenna, filibuster, gala, garotte, indigo, mulatto, negro, parasol, &c.

(2) **Portuguese.**—Caste, fetishism, palaver, porcelain, moidore, &c.

(3) **Italian.**—In the time of Chaucer, Italian exercised an important influence upon our literature, but scarcely any upon the language. During the reigns of Henry VIII., Mary, and Elizabeth, Italian was as necessary and familiar to every courtier as French is now-a-days. Numerous Italian works were translated into English and Italian peculiarities of speech were copied by English speakers and writers who wished to be thought in fashion. The writings of Surrey, Wyatt, Spenser, and Milton, show an intimate acquaintance with Italian literature. To Italian we are indebted for the following words: ambuscade, balustrade, bagatelle, balcony, bandit, bravo, broccoli, buffoon, burlesque, bust, cadence, canto, caricature, cartoon, charlatan, citadel, concert, ditto, folio, gazette, grotto, harlequin, lava, madrigal, masquerade, motto, moustache, opera, parapet, pedant, proviso, regatta, rocket, ruffian, serenade, sketch, sovereign, stanza, stiletto, umbrella, volcano, &c.

(4) **Modern French.**—Some few were introduced during the reign of Charles II., as chagrin, good

---

[1] Lat. lacerta = lizard.

graces, grimace, repartee. Many others have come into the language at a still later period: *accoucheur, début, depôt, déjeuner, élite, goût, programme, soirée, précis,* &c.

44. A few words are borrowed from other **Teutonic** tongues :—

(1) **Dutch.**—Mostly nautical terms, as *boom, hoy, sloop, schooner, skipper, yacht,* &c

(2) **German.**—(i) Names of metals, *cobalt, nickel, zinc,* &c., (ii) *loafer, seeverg, plunder,* (iii) some few terms are formed after a German model, *father-land, folk-lore, fuller's earth, hand-book, one-sided, pipe-clay, stand-point,* &c.

45. We have naturalized miscellaneous words from various sources :—

(1) **Hindu.**—*Calico, chintz, muslin, loot, jungle, pundit, rice, durbar,* &c.

(2) **Persian** —*Chess, lilac, orange, sash, turban,* &c.

(3) **Hebrew.**—*Abbot, amen, cabal, cherub, jubilee, pharisaical, sabbath, shibboleth.*

(4) **Arabic.**—*Admiral, alchemy, alcohol, almanac, arsenal, assassin, bazaar, chemistry, cipher, gazelle, giraffe, shrub, syrup, sofa, talisman, tariff, zenith, zero,* &c.

(5) **Turkish.**—*Bey, chouse, scimitar,* &c.

(6) **Malay.**—(Run) *amuck, bamboo, bantam, orang-utang, sago,* &c.

(7) **Chinese.**—*Caddy, nankeen, satin, tea, mandarin,* &c

(8) **American** —*Canoe, cocoa, hammock, maize, tobacco, tomahawk, wigwam, yam.*

Preponderance of the Native over the Foreign Element.

46 The total number of words in a complete English dictionary would be about 100,000. Numerically the words of Classical origin are about twice as many as pure English terms. The best writers, however, use less than a tenth of the total number; while in ordinary conversation, our vocabulary contains from three to five thousand words.

Recollecting that all our most familiar terms are unborrowed, and that in an ordinary page of English, pure native words are used about five times as often as one foreign term, we can have no difficulty in seeing that the pure English element greatly preponderates over the foreign element

English is a mixed language only in regard to its vocabulary; its grammar is neither borrowed nor mixed. We cannot, therefore, speak of English as a Romance tongue, the construction and meaning of sentences depend upon the use of our grammatical inflexions, and as these are of native origin they serve still more to make the English element the essential and most important part of our language.

47. Pure English elements are :—

(1) **Grammatical inflexions.**

a. Plural suffixes of nouns (*-s,-n*) · possessive case (*-s*)

b Suffixes marking comparison of adjectives (*-er, -est*).

c. Verbal inflexions marking persons (-*st*, -*th*, -*s*) ;
tense (-*d*, -*t*) ; endings of participles (-*en*, -*ing*).

d. Auxiliary words used in place of inflexions :—

i. Words used for comparing of adjectives (*more*
   and *most*).

ii. Auxiliary verbs (*be*, *am*, *have*, *shall*, *will*).

(2) **Grammatical words.**

a. All numerals : *one*, *two*, &c., except *second*,
million, *billion*.

b. Demonstratives : *the*, *this*, *that*, &c.

c. Pronouns (personal, relative, &c.) : *I*, *thou*, *he*,
who, &c.

d. Many adverbs of time and place . *here*, *there*,
when, &c.

e. Most prepositions and conjunctions.

f. All nouns forming their plural by vowel
change.

g. All adjectives of irregular comparison.

h. All verbs forming their past tense by change of
vowel.

i. All anomalous verbs.

j. Causative verbs, formed from intransitive verbs
by vowel change.

(3) i. **Numerous suffixes of—**

a. **Nouns,** -*hood*, -*ship*, -*dom*, -*ness*, -*ing*, -*th* (-*t*), &c.

b. **Adjectives,** -*ful*, -*ly*, -*en*, -*ish*, -*some*, &c.

c. **Verbs,** -*en*, -*le*, -*er*.

ii. **Numerous prefixes.**

a, *be*, *for*, *ful*, *over*, *out*, &c.

(4). **Most monosyllabic words.**

5. The names of most striking objects and agencies in nature as the heavenly bodies, *sky, heaven, sun, moon, stars. the elements, fire, earth, water,* and their natural changes, *thunder, lightning, hail, snow, rain, wind, storm, light, heat, darkness,* &c , the seasons, *spring, summer, winter,* [1] the natural divisions of time, *day, night, morning, evening, twilight, sunset, sunrise,* &c ; natural features, external scenery, *height, hill, dale, dell, sea, stream, flood, spring, well, island, land, wood, tree,* &c , words used in earliest childhood, *father, mother, sister, brother, son, daughter, child, home, kin, friend, house, roof, hearth,* parts of the house and household furniture, *room, wall, yard, floor, stair, gate, stool, bed, bench, loom, spoon, cup, kettle* &c ; food and clothing, *cloth, shirt, coat, shoe, hat,* &c ; *bread, leaf, milk, cake, ale, wine, beer;* agricultural terms, *plough, rake, harrow, scythe, barn, flail, sheaf, yoke,* &c., the ordinary terms of traffic, *trade, business, cheap, dear, sell, buy, baker, miller, smith, tanner, bookseller,* &c.. names of trees and plants, *ash, beech, birch, oak, apple, corn, wheat,* &c.; quadrupeds, *deer, sheep, sow, swine, cow, horse, goat, fox, dog, hound,* &c ; birds, *hawk, raven, rook, crow, swan, owl, dove, lark, nightingale, hen, goose, duck, gander, drake,* &c., *fish, eel, herring, lobster, otter, whale,* &c.; insects, *worm, adder, snake, wasp, fly, gnat,* &c , parts of the body of man and beast, *flesh, skin, bone, head, limb, hand,* &c.; *horn, snout,*

---

[1] *Autumn* is Latin.

tail, claw, hoof, &c., **modes of bodily actions
and posture,** &c., *sit, stand, lean, walk, run, leap,
stagger, wake, sleep, nod, rise, talk,* &c.; **emotions
and passions,** &c., *love, hope, fear, tear, weep,
laugh, smile,* &c , **common colours,** *white, red,
brown,* &c.

48. To the Romance and Latin elements belong
many words connected with dignities, offices, &c as,
duke, marquis, baron, &c., government, *state, people,
parliament, treaty, cabinet, minister, army,* &c.; law,
attorney, barrister, damage, felony, &c ; church, *bap-
tism, ceremony, bible, prayer, preach, lesson, creed, evan-
gelist,* &c ; general and abstract terms, *sense, emotion,
passion, colour,* &c   Latin and Greek words are most
numerous in scientific and philosophical works.

CHAPTER III.

Early English Dialects.

§ 49 From the eleventh to the middle of the four-
teenth century there was no standard or classical
language. Various forms of English were spoken in
different parts of the country, and every work written
during this period illustrates some local variety of the
English Speech. There were three leading dialects
in the fourteenth century, Southern, Midland, and
Northern, each distinguished by certain grammatical
peculiarities.

Thus in a work written South of the Thames the
verb in the plural of the present indicative ends in
-eth, as we habbeth, we have : a work composed
between the Thames and Humber has -en instead of
-eth, as we habben.

A Northern writer in the district between the
Humber and the Firth of Forth avoids the use of
-eth and -en, and substitutes -es for them, or, as is
frequently the case, uses an uninflected form, as we
haves, or we have.

Southern.—"We hopeth for to habbe heuen-
riche blisce" : "Ye habbeth iherd thet godspel."
(Kentish Sermons, A.D 1240—50.)

Bote the Flemynges that woneth in the west syde
of Wales habbeth yleft here straunge speche, and
speketh Saxonlych ynow. (Trevisa, A D. 1387.)

Midland.— Thei knelen alle, and with o vois
        The King thei thonken of this chois.
                    (Gower, A D 1393)
  We hauen shep, and we hauen swin   (Havelok
the Dane, before 1300)
  Northern. —Tharfor maysters soom tyme uses
the wand that has childer to lere under thair hand.
(Hampole, 1340)
        Thir twa heuens ay obout-rynnes
        Both day and nyght, and neuer blynnes
                    (*Ib*)

MODERN ENGLISH HAS SPRUNG FROM THE EAST-MIDLAND DIALECT

  50 The Midland dialect between the Thames and
the Humber covered a very large area and had
various local varieties
  The most important of these was the East-Midland
spoken in Lincolnshire, Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex,
which had many words and grammatical forms in
common with the Northern dialects
  As early as the beginning of the thirteenth century
it had thrown off most of the older inflexions (pre-
served by the Southern dialects) and was almost as
flexionless as our own   It had an extensive literature
and numbered among its writers, Ormin, Robert of
Brunne, Wicliffe, Gower and Chaucer   Of all these,
Chaucer was the author whose works were most
popular and widely diffused   Successive writers, as
Hoccleve, Lydgate, and Heywood, took him for their
model, and thus his influence did not die out till
a great change caused by the revival of learning and

other important circumstances in the reigns of the Tudors had brought about a new era in the language and literature

It was Chaucer's influence then that caused the East Midland speech to supersede the other dialects and to assume the position of the standard literary English, from which has come in a direct line with but few flexional changes the language spoken and written by educated Englishmen in all parts of the British Empire

50. Periods of the English Language — A language is said to be dead when it is no longer spoken. Such a language cannot be altered but a living language is always undergoing some change or other We do not always take note of it, because it is so very gradual, but when we compare the writers of one period with those of another we have plain evidence of the fact. The farther we go back in this comparison the greater the changes appear, and our language in its earliest period looks very much like a foreign tongue.

In referring to the earlier periods or stages of growth through which our language has passed, we shall distinguish the following divisions —

(1) **Old English** (A.D. 450—1100).—The language of this period is inflexional Its vocabulary contains few or no foreign elements* Its poetry is alliterative. To this period belong the writings of *Cædmon, Alfred,* and *Ælfric*

(2) **Early English** (A.D. 1100—1250).—The language in this period shows many changes both in orthography and grammar In the first part of this

period the modifications were chiefly orthographical,
but they affected the endings of words, and thus led
the way to the grammatical changes which took place
in the latter part of the thirteenth century.

To the earlier part of this period belong the fol-
lowing works: the *Brut*, written by *Layamon*, the
Ormulum, by *Ormin*; the *Ancren Riwle*, &c. To the
latter half belong the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*,
the *Owl and Nightingale*, &c.

(3) **Middle English** (A.D. 1250—1485).—Most
of the older inflexions of nouns and adjectives have
now disappeared. The verbal inflexions are much
altered, and many strong verbs have been replaced by
weak ones. To the first half of this period belong
a *Metrical Chronicle*, and *Lives of Saints*, attributed
to Robert of Gloucester, Langtoft's *Metrical Chronicle*,
translated by *Robert of Brunne*, and the *Handlyng
Synne*, by the same writer, the *Pricke of Conscience*, by
Hampole; the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*, by Dan Michel of
Northgate, Kent. To the second half belong the works
of *Wicliffe, William Langley* (or *Langland*), *Gower*, and
Chaucer, &c

(4) **Modern English**, from A.D. 1485 to the
present time. We might subdivide this period into
two parts, calling the language in the earlier period
from **1485 to 1600 Tudor English.**

CHAPTER IV.

Sounds and Letters.

(1) LETTERS.

51 Letters are conventional signs employed to
represent sounds   They have grown out of the old
pictorial mode of writing, and were at first abbre-
viated pictures [1]

In the oldest alphabets, a letter does not represent
an indivisible sound (consonant *or* vowel), but a
syllable (consonant *and* vowel).

After a time the consonants were looked upon as the
most important part, and consequently they alone were
written, or written in full, while the vowel was either
omitted or represented by some less conspicuous
symbol

Such was the character of the old Phœnician alpha-
bet, from which have come the Hebrew, Syriac,
Arabic, Sanskrit, and Greek alphabets.

The **Latin** alphabet, derived from one of the older
forms of the Greek, is the parent of our own
symbols.

---

[1] Cp. the names of the letters in Hebrew and Greek, *b* = *beth*
(house), *Beta* . *g* = *gimel* (camel), *Gamma*, *d* = *daleth* (door),
Delta.

The oldest English alphabet consisted of twenty-four [1] letters, all except three being Roman characters; Þ, (*thorn* = *th*), and ꝥ (*wên* = *w*), are Runic letters; Ð, ꝥ is merely a crossed *d* used instead of the *thorn* j is another form of i, and v of u. w is a doubling of u.

(2) SOUNDS.

52   The spoken alphabet is composed of sounds produced by the articulating organs (or organs of speech), *throat, tongue, palate, lips*, &c., which serve to modify the breath as it issues from the larynx.

There are two great divisions of Sounds :

Vowels and Consonants.

The **Vowels** are the open sounds of a language. In a vowel sound the emission of the breath is modified by the organs of speech, but is not interrupted or stopped by the actual contact of any of these organs. In the Indo-European speech there were only three original short vowels **a, i, u** (*far, bit, full*), from which have sprung the long vowels **a** (*father*), **i** (*machine*), **u** (*fool*).

The dipthongs are formed in passing from one vowel sound to another : the oldest are **e = a + i** (*fête*), **o = a + u** (*note*).   All the varieties of vowel sounds,

---

[1] See Whitney, "Language and the study of Language," p 465 (1867).

(and they may be almost infinite) are modifications of the three original vowels (a, i, u.)

The **Consonants** are closer sounds than the vowels and less musical. They are produced by the contact of one or other of the organs of speech, whereby the stream of breath is wholly or partially stopped. In the oldest Indo-European speech there were only twelve consonant sounds, b, p, d, t, g, k, s, m, n, l, r; and h in combination with b, d, g, forming the aspirates bh, dh, gh (cp. Gr. φ, θ, χ).

53. **Classification of Consonants.**—The consonants can be arranged according to the organ by which they are sounded : **Guttural** (*g, k*): **Dental** (*d, t, th*), **Labial** (*b, p, v, f,*) &c. They can also be classified according as the breath is wholly or partially stopped in its exit. Stopped sounds are called **mutes** or **checks**, as g, k, d, t, b, p.

In the sounds m, n, ng, the breath passes through the nose, and they are called **nasals**.

Partially stopped sounds are termed **Spirants**, as, h, th, f, s, z, &c. ; l and r are called **Trills**.

54. In comparing **b** and **p** &c., **d** and **t** &c., we shall find that **b** and **d** are pronounced with less effort than **p** and **t**; hence **b** and **d**, &c. are said to be **soft** or **flat**, while **p** and **t**, &c. are called **hard** or **sharp consonants.**

55. TABLE OF CONSONANT SOUNDS.

	MUTES			SPIRANTS		
	Flat	Sharp	Nasal	Flat	Sharp	Trill
Gutturals	G	K	NG		Ch (loch) H	
Palatals	J	Ch			Y (yea)	
Palatal Sibilants				Zh (azure)	Sh (sure)	R
Dental Sibilants				Z (prize, rise)	S (mouse)	L
Dentals	D	T	N	Dh (bathe)	Th (bath)	
Labials	B	P	M	V (witch) W (witch)	F (which) Hw (which)	

56. Ch and J (in English) are compounds : ch = *t* + *sh* (sure); J = *d* + *zh* (azure).

Zh and sh are connected with the *palatals*, while z and s are allied to the dental, or lingual series of sounds.

57. From this table of consonants we have omitted

(1) c ; because it can be represented by k before a, o, u, and by s (in *rice*) before e, i, y.

(2) q ; because it is equivalent to kw.

(3) x , because it is a compound of ks, as in *fox*.

Number of Elementary Sounds in the English spoken Alphabet.

58. In addition to the twenty-four consonants contained in the above table, we have fourteen vowels and five diphthongs, making altogether **forty-three** sounds.

I.—Consonants.

1.	*b*	9	*m*	17	*y*.
2.	*d.*	10	*n.*	18	*z*
3	*f.*	11	*p*	19	*ch*
4.	*g*	12	*r*	20	*dh* (bathe).
5	*h*	13	*s*	21	*th* (bath)
6	*j*	14	*t*	22	*zh* (azure)
7	*k.*	15	*v*	23	*sh* (sure)
8.	*l*	16	*w*	24.	*hw* (what)

II.—Vowels.

25	*a* in gnat.	32.	*e* in meet.
26	*a* in pair, ware	33.	*i* in knit
27	*a* fame	34.	*o* in not
28	*a* father	35.	*o* in note
29	*a* all	36.	*oo* in fool, rule
30	*a* want	37	*oo* in wood, put
31.	*e* in met.	38	*u* in nut.

III.—Diphthongs.

39.	*i* in high.
40.	*i* in aye.
41.	*oi* in boil.
42.	*ow* in how, bound.
43	*ew* in mew.

Imperfections of the English Alphabet.

59. A perfect alphabet must be based upon phonetic principles, and (1) every simple sound must be represented by a distinct symbol; (2) no sound must be represented by more than one sign

a. The spoken alphabet contains forty-three sounds, *but the *written* alphabet has only twenty-six letters or symbols to represent them, therefore in the first point necessary to a perfect system of orthography the English alphabet is found wanting

The alphabet, as we have seen, is *redundant*, containing three superfluous letters, *c*, *q*, *x*, so that it contains only twenty-three letters wherewith to represent forty-three sounds   Again, the five vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, have to represent thirteen sounds (see § 58)   It is thus both imperfect and redundant.

The same combinations of letters, too, have distinct sounds, as *ough* in bough, borough, cough, chough, hough, hiccough, though, trough, through, &c. sough; *ea* in beat, bear, heard, &c.

b. In regard to the second point, that no sound should be represented by more than one sign, we again find that the English alphabet fails.   The letter *ō* (in *note*) may be represented by *oa* (boat), *oe* (toe), *eo* (yeoman), *ou* (soul), *ow* (sow), *ew* (sew), *au* (hautboy), *eau* (beau), *owe* (owʒe), *oo* (floor), *oh* (oh¹). The alphabet is therefore *inconsistent* as well as *imperfect.*

Many letters are silent as in *psalm, calf, could, gnat, know,* &c.

c The English alphabet is supplemented by a number of double letters called *digraphs* (*oa, oo,* &c.)

'which are as inconsistently employed as the simple
characters themselves.

d. Other expedients for remedying the defects of
the alphabet are recognised—

(1) The use of a final *e* to denote a long vowel, as
bite, note, &c.[1] But even with regard to this *e* the
orthography is not consistent; it will not allow a
word to end in *v*, although the preceding vowel is
short, hence an *e* is retained in *live, give, &c.*

(2) The doubling of consonants to indicate a short
vowel, as *folly, hotter, &c.*[2]

It must be recollected that the letters *a, e, i, o, u,*
were originally devised and intended to represent
the vowel sounds heard in *father, prey, pique, pole,
rule,* respectively. In other languages that employ
them they still have this value.

During the written period of our language the pro-
nunciation of the vowels has undergone great and
extensive changes at different periods, while the
spelling has not kept pace with these changes, so
that there has arisen a great dislocation of our ortho-
graphical system, a divorcement of our written from
our spoken alphabet. The introduction of foreign
elements into the English language during its written
period has brought into use different, and often dis-
cordant, systems of orthography (cp. *ch* in *church,
chivalry, Christian, &c.*). In addition to this there
are peculiarities arising out of the orthographical
usages of the Old-English dialects.

---

[1] This came about because the final *e* was kept in writing after
the sound was dropped   The *i* in *bite* was long while the word
was dissyllabic.

[2] This arose through the short vowel causing the doubling of
the consonant.

CHAPTER V.

Permutation or Interchange of Sounds.

60. The sounds of a language are liable to certain changes.

One sound often passes into another.

(1) The vowels are subject to almost infinite variations: thus, short a, as in *gnat*, has kept its place in *land*, *hand*, &c., but has become ai in *name*, and o in ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ (O F ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ &c   Long a ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ o ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ ⁓ (= bān), &c.. Long i (as in *machine*), has become ı in *bite*, *drive*, &c. Long u (as in *pool*) has become ou, as in *house* (= hûs).

(2) The consonants also pass into one another, and the laws governing these changes may be arranged under the following heads.

i. All sounds uttered by the same organ are interchangeable, as b and p, &c., d and t, &c. To ascertain these, read *across* in the table in sect. 55.

ii. Sounds belonging to the same series though uttered by different organs, are interchangeable. Thus, the spirants f and th; th and s; l and r,

&c., often interchange. Read the columns *downwards* in section 55.

III. Combination of consonants leads to assimilation of the one to the other, as *gospel* = *gos-spel* = O E. *godspel, ditto* = Latin *dictum.*

61. **Sounds belonging to the same organ interchange.**—The most common change of sounds belonging to the same organ is the passing of a sharp short, its corresponding flat mute, or *vice versâ.* Pass from col. 1 to col. 2 in section 55 Sometimes the mutes and the aspirates of the same organ interchange.

Labials.—B has become p in *gossip* = O.E *godsib.* P has become b in *cobweb* = M.E. *copweb.* F has become v in *vixen* = *fixen* from *fox, vat* = *fat.* Cp. *wife* and *wives.* B and p change to v, as in *have* = O.E. *habban, knave* = O.E. *cnapa.* B and v sometimes pass into their corresponding nasal m, *summerset* = Fr *soubresaut, malmsey* = O.Fr. *malvoisie,* M changes to b in *marble,* = Lat. *marmor.*

Dentals.—D becomes t in *clot* = *clod, abbot* = O.E. *abbod.* T passes into d in *card* = *chart,* Fr. *carte,* Lat. *charta, pedigree* = T E. *petigree.* D and t become th in *father, mother,* O.E. *fader, moder, author* = O.E. *autour,* Lat. *auctor.* Th has become d in *could* = O.E. *cuthe; bedlam* = *Bethlehem;* it passes into t in *nostril* = O.E. *nas-thyrlu* = M.E. *nos-thirles.*

Gutturals.—K has become g in *wig* = *periwig* = *peruque; goblet* = Fr *gobelet* = M.Lat. *cupell· ·m.*

Palatals.—Ch and j interchange in *jaw* = *chaw, a-jar* = *a-char.*

62. Sounds belonging to the same series interchange :—

ɪ. The **Spirants** interchange with one another, **F = th.** Children often say *fumb* for *thumb*. Cp. *dwarf*, M E. *dwerth* and *dwerg* = O E. *thweorh;* Russian *Fedor = Theodore.* **F** often represents an older **h** or **gh**, as *cough, laugh*, &c. **Th** becomes **s** as *loves = loveth.* **S** between two vowels often becomes an **r** instead of **z.** Cp. *are = ase, were = wese.* Cp *forlorn = forlosen; frore* (Milton) *= frozen, varlet =* M. Lat. *vassaletus.*

ɪɪ. **Trills.—L** and **r** very frequently pass into one another, as *marble =* Fr. *marbre*, Lat. *marmor; palfrey =* Fr. *palefroi =* Lat *paraveredus, slander =* Fr. *esclandre =* Lat. *scandalum, chapter =* Fr *chapitre =* Lat. *capitulum.*

ɪɪɪ. **Gutturals and Palatals.—K** has become **ch**, as *chin, child =* O.E. *cin, cild; ditch* and *which =* O.E. *dic* and *hwilc.* **G** has become **j** ɪn *singe =* O.E. *besengan, bridge =* O.E. *brycg*, M.E. *brigge.* Cp. *joy =* Fr. *jouir*, Lat. *gaudere.*

63. Combination of Consonants causes assimilation. When two consonants come together the first is made like the second, or the second like the first. Cp. *best = bes-st = bet-st, ad-nose* with *at-tend*, and *absorb* with *absorption.* The above examples show us that we cannot keep every combination of sounds. Thus, we may write *cupboard*, but we must pronounce it *cubboard.*

The general law for the combination of consonant

sounds is, that a flat sound must be followed by a flat sound, and a sharp by a sharp sound.

This has an important bearing in English upon (1) the plural of nouns, (2) the possessive case of nouns, (3) the third person singular of verbs, (4) the past tense and passive participle of verbs.

Flat + Flat.

(1) *Slabs = slabz, lads = ladz; wives = wivz.*

(2) *Dog's = dog'z.*

(3) *Wags = wagz, stabs = stabz, bathes = bathez.*

(4) *Dubbed = dubd, hugged = hugd.*

Sharp + Sharp.

(1) *Slaps, mats, reefs.*

(2) *Cat's, bank's.*

(3) *Reaps, fasts.*

(4) *Weeped* has become *wept; lacked = lackt*

64. Some sounds are more difficult to pronounce than others Difficult sounds, as gutturals, often pass into easier sounds as spirants, or into mere breathings; sometimes they disappear altogether. This explains—

(1) The loss of gutturals at the end of words, as *godly* = O.E. *godlic, I* = O.E. *Ic,* day = O.E. *dæg,* &c.

(2) The silent letters in *through, though, high,* &c.

(3) The *f* sound in *laugh, cough,* &c.

(4) The *y* sound in *year,* O.E. *ger.*

(5) The *ow* in *tallow,* M.E. *talgh.*

65. The pronunciation of one sound is rendered easier by an additional one. Thus, **m** often becomes **mb** or **mp**, and **n** changes to **nd** or **nt**. Also **s** becomes **st**.

(**B** and **p** come in after **m**, because they are Labials, and **d**, **t** after **n**, because they are Dentals.)

(1) *Slumber* = O.E. *slumerian*, *nimble* = O E. *nimol*, *number* = Lat. *numerus*, *empty* = O.E *emtig'*, *tempt* = Lat. *tentare.*

(2) *Thunder* = O.E *thunor*, *hind* = O.E *hine*, *tender* = Lat. *tener*, *ancient* = O.Fr. *ancien*, *tyrant* = Fr *tiran.*

(3) *Amongst* = M.E. *amonges*; *whilst* = M E. *whiles*, &c.

66. Occasionally certain combinations of sounds become difficult, and one of the sounds is dropped. Thus, **-nf**, **-nth**, and **-ns**, have become **-f**, **-th**, and **-s**. Cp. *soft* with Germ. *sanft*; *tooth* with Goth. *tunthus*, Germ. *zahn*, *goose* (O.E. *gôs*) with Germ. *gans.*

GRIMM'S LAW OF PERMUTATION OF CONSONANTS.

67. We have seen that one sound may pass into another, and also that one sound is often preferred to another, especially by children in learning to speak, who say *nuffink* for *nothing*, and *poot* for *foot*, &c.

Dialects are often distinguished by their preference for particular sounds. In the south-west of England v and z are used instead of f and s, as *vinger* (finger), *zing* (sing). Languages of the same class exhibit a

similar partiality; thus, where we have **d** and **th** the Germans employ **th** (= **t**) and **d**. Cp. *deer* = Ger. *thier* = O.H Ger. *tier*, *thorn* = Ger. *dorn*.

This substitution of one sound for another extends to all the languages of the Indo-European family, and for the most part follows the rules already laid down for the Permutation of Sounds. (1) All sounds pronounced by the same organ are interchangeable; (2) All sounds of the same series are liable to pass into one another. We can read table in sect 55 across or downwards.

The collection of rules by which we can at once tell what sounds in one language correspond to those of its kindred tongues, is called GRIMM'S LAW.

To render the law as simple as possible, we must bear in mind, (1) the three-fold division of sounds into **Aspirate**, **Flat**, and **Sharp**, according to the following arrangement :—

Names.	Aspirate	Flat or Soft	Sharp or Hard
Labial . .	f	b	p
Dental .	th	d	t
Guttural . . .	h	g	k (c)

(2) the classification of the Indo-European languages into three groups.

      I. **Classical** (Greek, Latin, Sanskrit, &c)

      II. **Low-German** (English, &c.)

      III. **High-German**.

(1) Grimm's Law shows us that an **Aspirate** in I. the *Classical* Languages is represented by a flat in II. *Low-German*, and by a **sharp** in III. *High-German*.

(2) A **Flat** mute in I. corresponds to a **sharp** in II. and an aspirate in III.

(3) A **Sharp** consonant in I. corresponds to an aspirate in II. and a flat in III.

I	Classical . .	Aspirate	Flat	Sharp
II.	Low German	Flat	Sharp	Aspirate
III.	High German	Sharp	Aspirate	Flat

ILLUSTRATIONS.

I.

Mnemonic.[1] ASH	Classical	Low German	O.H German.
	Aspirate	Soft *or* Flat	Hard *or* Sharp
Labials . . .	*f*rater	*b*rother	*p*ruoder
Dentals . . .	θυγατηρ	*d*aughter	*t*ohtar Ger. *t*ochter
Gutturals . .	χήν, anser (= hanser)	*g*oose	*h*ans

[1] If it be remembered that *Soft* = *Flat*, and *Hard* = *Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word ASH, with its varying forms SHA or HAS, according to the sound which is to come first.

II.

Mnemonic² SHA	Classical.	Low German.	O. H. German.
	Soft *or* Flat	Hard *or* Sharp.	Aspirate
Labials .	κάνναβις	hem*p*	hana*f*(Ger han*f*)
Dentals .	*d*omare, *d*uo	*t*ame, *t*wo	*z*eman, *z*wei (Ger *z*wei)
Gutturals .	e*g*o, *g*enu	O.E. I*c*, *k*nee	I*k*, (Ger. i*ch*)

III.

Mnemonic¹ HAS	Classical.	Low German.	O. H. German
	Hard *or* Sharp	Aspirate	Soft *or* Flat.
Labials .	*p*ater	*f*ather	va*t*ar (Ger va*t*er.)
Dentals .	*t*u, *t*res	*th*ou, *th*ree	*d*u, *d*rı (Ger. drei)
Gutturals .	so*c*er o*ct*o *c*aput	swe*or* (= swe*ohr*) ei*ght* *h*ead (O.E. *h*eafod)	Ger. schwa*g*er Ger a*ch*t (irreg.) *h*oupit (Ger *h*aupt)

SUPPRESSION, ADDITION, AND TRANSPOSITION OF CONSONANT SOUNDS.

68   There are other changes of letters that demand a slight notice. Sounds are (1) dropped, (2) added, (3) transposed.

---

² If it be remembered that *Soft* = *Flat*, and *Hard* = *Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word ASH, with its varying forms SHA or HAS, according to the sound which is to come first.

E

(1) Dropping of Letters.

Sounds fall away from—

I   the beginning of a word (*Aphæresis*).

II   the end of a word (*Apocope*).

III   the body of a word, causing coalescence of two sounds (*Syncope*).

Accent plays an important part in these changes, unaccented syllables are much weaker than accented ones, and are thus more liable to drop off.

I. ABHÆRESIS.

reeve	=	O E ge-refa
sport	=	E.E disport.
bishop	=	Lat. episcopus.
diamond	=	Fr. diamant, Lat. adamant.

II. APOCOPE. '

before	=	O E beforan.
riddle	=	O.E ræd-els
riches	=	E E richesse.
maugre	=	Lat male-gnatum.
pork	—	Fr porc, Lat. porcus.

III SYNCOPE,

brain	=	O E brægen.
head	=	O.E heafod
sexton	=	sacristan.
palsy	=	paralysis.
caitiff	=	Fr. chétif, Lat. captivus.
cruel	=	Lat crudelis.
pray	=	Fr prier, Lat precari.
church	=	O E cyrice.
mint	=	O,E mynet, Lat. moneta.
bounty	=	Fr bonté, Lat bonitatem.
clergy	=	Fr clergé, Lat. clericatus.

(2) Addition of Letters.

Letters may be added to the primitive form
I. at the beginning of a word (*Prothesis*).
II. at the end of a word (*Epithesis*).
III. in the body of a word (*Epenthesis*).

I PROTHESIS.

h, haughty, Lat. altus, Fr. haut.
n (from the indef. article), newt (= an ewt); nouch
(= an ouch).
s, scramble, scratch, squeeze.

II EPITHESIS.

d (after an originally final e), wicked, wretched.
d (after the letter n), sound. *See* § 65, p. 46.
h (after s), push, nourish
t (after n)   *See* § 65, p. 46.
t (after s).   *See* § 65, p. 46.

III EPENTHESIS

b (after m). *See* § 65, p. 46.
p (after m). *See* § 65, p. 46
d (after l), alder (-liefest), M E. *aller*, *i.e.* of all.
n (before t), lantern (Lat *laterna*).
n (before g), messenger, passenger.
r, groom, hoarse, culprit.
Some letters are merely orthographical blunders,
having crept in through a false etymology or analogy.
l in could because of *should*, *would*.
h in lanthorn from a supposed connection with
horn; and in rhyme from a supposed connection
with *rhythm*.

th in farther (because confused with *further*).

s in island (as if derived from *isle*).

w in whole and its derivatives

x in pickaxe (as if connected with *axe.* Cp. M. E. *picoys*).

(3) Metathesis, or Transposition of Letters.

r third for *thrid* (cp. three), nostrils (for *nosthirls*), cp. trouble with *dis-turb*.

ps becomes sp, clasped (= M.E. *clapsed*), wasp (= O E *wæps*).

sc becomes cs or x, hoax (O.E. *husc*), cp. O.E. *ascian*, M E axe for *ask*.

CHAPTER VI.

Etymology.

69. **Etymology** treats of the classification, structure, and history of words; its chief divisions are inflexion and derivation.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

70. Words are arranged in classes, according to the functions they perform in a sentence; these classes are called the Parts of Speech.[1]

$$
\text{Declinable} \left\{
\begin{array}{l}
\text{1. Noun.} \\
\text{2. Adjective.} \\
\text{3. Pronoun.} \\
\text{4. Verb.}
\end{array}
\right.
$$

$$
\text{Indeclinable} \left\{
\begin{array}{l}
\text{5. Adverb.} \\
\text{6. Preposition.} \\
\text{7. Conjunction.} \\
\text{8. Interjection.}
\end{array}
\right.
$$

INFLEXION AND DERIVATION.

71. The changes which words undergo to mark case, gender, number, comparison, tense, person, &c., are called *inflexions.*

---

[1] Speech here means language.

The inflexion of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *declension;* when applied to verbs, it is called *conjugation.*

A *root* or *radical* is that part of a word which cannot be reduced to a simpler or more original form.

According to their origin, roots are either *predicative*, as *horse, white, write,* &c., or *demonstrative,* as *he, the,* &c.

When the root is modified by a suffix, it is called a *derivative,* thus *wil-ful, good-ly, tru-th,* are derived respectively from *will, good,* and *true.*

Derivates may be native or foreign, as *know-ledge* (English), *sci-ence* (Latin)   *Cognates* must be carefully distinguished from *derived* words   thus *father* is cognate with the Latin *pater* but *paternal* is derived from *pater.*

Two cognate forms of the same class may exist side by side; *from* (English), and *fro* (Scandinavian)

When a derivative or compound consists of elements belonging to different languages, it is called a hybrid, as *shepherd-ess* (English + Romance), *socialism,* (Latin + Greek)

A word containing two roots is called a *compound,* as *shep-herd, fore-man, break-fast,* &c.

Prefixes like *be, fore, with,* &c., are compounded with verbs as *be-speak, fore-tell, with-stand,* &c

Compounds like *won't, nill,* (will not) áre called agglutinative compounds   This term might be applied to all compounds, in which the elements are intimately fused, as *none, naught, fortnight, gospel,* &c.

72. Suffixes of inflexion and derivation are called *formative* elements.

All Suffixes are shortened forms of predicative or demonstrative roots.

The first step towards inflexion is *collocation,* just as

good-like has given us *goodly*. *See* Suffixes of Predica-
tive origin.

The suffix -*i* in Gothic *hund-s*, Lat *cani-s*, which marks
the nominative case, is nothing more than a shortened form of
the old demonstrative pronoun, *sa*, O E *se*, the, that.
Thus *vox* = *voc-s*, the calling, the voice; *rex* = *reg-s*, the
ruling one, the king.
The ending -*th* in the third person sing of verbs, as *love-th*,
is another form of our demonstrative *the*, *tha-t*.

73. That which was not originally an inflexion often
by usage becomes one. Thus the vowel change in
the plural of nouns, and in the past tense of strong
verbs was not originally an inflexion.

In *feet*, *teeth*, &c., a vowel and a plural suffix (*s*) have
been lost from a very early period. *See* Plurals of
Nouns by Vowel Change.

The vowel change in *held*, *fell*, &c is due to an
original reduplication. *See* Strong Verbs.

The addition of a syllable causes a change in the root-vowel
Cp *nātion*, and *nātional: fore*, and *forehead break*, and
breakfast
The loss of an internal letter cp see the lengthening of ǝ
in ʼ... ... . .. ,.. . ... ..,., . (. ,
i .,. ., .   , | . | ., . ,

The suffix -*n* in ox-*en* was not originally a sign of
the plural, but was added to the root, before the
addition of the ordinary plural sign -*s*. After a time
the -*s* dropped off leaving the inserted letter *n* to
represent the plural inflexion. Cp *eaves*, *alms*, *riches*,
&c , which are now treated like plurals in -*s*.

The primitive plural of *ox* was not *oxan* but *oxans Chicken*
was once used as a plural, but the -*en* is no plural sign. In
O.E the plural of *chicken* = *cycen-u* from *cycen*, a *chicken :* after

a time it became *chicken-e*, or *chicken.* Cp. M.E *lenden* for *lenden-u* or *lenden-e*, loins.

Such nouns as *song*, *band*, &c are usually treated as derivatives of the verbs *sing*, *bind*, &c. This is an erroneous view. The O.E. *sang*, *band*, show that these words are the roots of which *sing* and *bind* are weakened forms.

74. The same word has sometimes come to have two different forms, with different functions, as *to* and *too*, *of* and *off* *through* and *thorough*; *one* and *an*, &c.

75. The loss of inflexion is supplied by the use of independent roots. *Case-endings* are replaced by *prepositions*; *verbal ecdings* by *auxiliary verbs.* Cp. the use of the prepositions *of* and *to* for the old genitive and dative inflexions: *do*, *have*, *shall*, &c. in the formation of tenses . *more* and *most* instead of *-er*, *-est* in the comparison of adjectives.

The preposition *to* has replaced the infinitive ending *-an* (*-en*) as, *drinc-an* = to drink.

76. There is a tendency in all languages to simplify whatever has become complex or obsolete.

Thus the plural suffix *-s* has replaced various others, in *eyes*, *hands*, *sisters*, = O.E. *eâg-an*, *hand-a*, *swustr-u.*

Many strong verbs have conformed to the weak or regular conjugation, as *helped*, O.E. *heolp*, &c. *See* remarks on Gender and Number of Nouns, and on Strong Verbs.

77. To supply losses, the functions of other parts of speech have been extended. The loss of the old

relative pronouns *se*, *the*, &c. left us the neuter in-
declinable *that*, after a time the interrogatives were
employed in their stead. *See* Relative Pronouns.

78. The English language has lost most of the older
inflexions, hence its words are no longer formally
distinguished (as in Latin, Greek, &c.) as belonging to
certain parts of speech without reference to their use
in a sentence. The functions of words like *homo*,
amare, &c. are limited, but in English almost any
part of speech may be used as any other part of
speech.[1]

Thus a verb may become a noun without any
change of form.

> "They think nothing they shall from it pass,
> When all that is shall be turned to *was* "
>   HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure.*

"For He [God] is wythoute *was*, wythoute *stel by*,"
(For He is without *was*, and without *shall be*)
                            Ayenbite, p 104.

Even in Shakespeare the preterite of a verb has
been converted into a substantive . a feat not
easily performed by any synthetical language, cp.

"No *had*, my Lord!" *King John*, IV. 2, 207.

'This formal fool, your man, speaks nought but proverbs ;
and speak men, what they can to him, he'll answer with some
rhyme-rotten sentence, or old saying such *spokes* as the ancient
of the parish use "
            H PORTER's *Two Angry Women of Abingdon.*

"Where Galaad made his avowes and *hightes* (promises)."
                            HARDYNG's *Chronicle*, p 133

Hight = the preterite of the old verb *hatan* to call, promise.

---

[1] See Abbott's "Shakspearian Grammar."

A substantive is easily used as a verb, thus Fuller in speaking of *those writers who multiply on the map of the Holy Land streams bearing the name of "River of Egypt,"* says :—

"Such is the nimiety of my caution herein, who have *Egypt rivered* this map to purpose."

FULLER, *A Pisgah sight of Palestine,* p 618, ed. 1869.

        "Do you think I *fable* with you "
                                    BEN JONSON'S *Alchemist.*
   Rob. 'Las sir, that lamb
        Were most unnatural that should hate the dam.
   Steph. *Lamb* me no lambs, Sir
                                    ROWLEY, *A New Wonder.*

Adjectives are used as verbs without even the verbal ending **-en.** Shakespeare uses *to fat,* to fatten. Cp. thai *greteth* = grandescunt, *become great* (Palladius, *On Husbondrie*).

In Latin, nominal verbs are not uncommon, but they have a verbal form given them by the suffix to which the inflexions are added as *arbor-esc-o* from *arbor,* a tree. Fuller renders "*Hæc planta in Judæâ* aborescit*" by—

        "Hissop *doth tree it* in Judæa "
                                    Pisgah Sight, p. 194.

An adverb may do duty for a verb, as :—

        "They *askance* their eyes
                                    SHAKSPEARE'S *Rape of Lucrece.*

Cp "To *back* the horses," &c.

A preposition and a numeral, originally forming an adverbial phrase, has established itself as a verb and produced a noun. Cp *atone* and *atonement.*

> " The constable is called to *atone* the broil."
>
> T. HEYWOOD'S *English Traveller.*

> " To *atone* two Israelites at variance "
>
> FULLER, *A Pisgah Sight*, p. 519.

Any noun may be turned into an adjective; as a *gold* watch, a *church* steeple, a *silk* thread.

By the simple use of the suffix *-ed* (= possessing), we are able to give a participial, and therefore an adjective appearance to almost any noun   Cp. *booted, spurred, one-eyed,* &c.

> " As the Jews' coats were *collared* above, so they were *skirted* and *fringed* below, by God's special command "
>
> FULLER, *A Pisgah Sight*, p 524

Adjectives are easily converted into nouns.   Cp. *simples, worthies, seconds.*

> -" When I first took thee, 'twas for *good* and *bad.*
> O change thy *bad* to *good* "
>
> T. HEYWOOD, *The late Lancashire Witches.*

> " Fear not my fall ; the *steep* is fairest *plain.*"
>
> LORD BROOKE'S *Alaham.*

" O these *extremes* of misery and joy.

> 'Tis said sometimes they'll [evil spirits] impudently stand
> A flight of beams from the *forlorn* of day,
> And scorn the crowing of the *sprightly* cocks ".
>
> J. CROWNE'S *Thyestes.*

> " And shall the *baser* over-rule the *better ?*
> Or are they better since they are the bigger "
>
> CHAPMAN'S *Byron's Tragedy.*

> Jove but my *equal,* Cæsar but my *second* "
>
> BEN JONSON'S *Sad Shepherd.*

Even pronominal forms are occasionally employed
as nouns :—

> "The cruel *she* alive."
>> SHAKESPEARE *Twelfth Night*, Act I Sc 5.
>
> "The *shes* of Italy"
>> *Cymbeline*, Act I Sc 4.
>
> "A wretch, a worm, a *nothing* "
>> FORD's *'Tis Pity*, &c.
>
> "Speak of thy fair *self*, Edith "
>> J FLETCHER's *Bloody Brother*

"An unthroughfaresome *whatkin* " (an impenetrable some-
thing) —FAIRFAX.

Interjections may be converted into substantives or
verbs :—

> "The effect of thine *O-yes*."
>> DEKKER, *Gull's Hornbook*.
>
> "All the *fohs* in fairest ladys' mouths "
>> *Ib*.
>
> "This sorrowful *heigho* "
>> NASH, *Lenten Stuff*.
>
> "Cough and *hem*."
>
> "*Mew* at passionate speeches."
>> *Ib*.

Mum and *hem* are used as adjectives in the follow-
ing passage :—

"Now pleased, now froward, now *mum*, now *hem* "
>> *Calisto and Melibœa*.

A slight change of pronunciation replaces an in-
flexion   Cp bathe and bath, glaze and glass,
co'nduct and condu'ct.

CHAPTER VII.

Nouns.

I GENDER

79. **Gender** is a grammatical distinction and applies to *words* only. Sex is a natural distinction, and applies to *living objects*.

By personification we can speak of inanimate things as male or female, as

"The *Sun* in *his* glory, the *Moon* in *her* wane"

⟨illegible handwritten/faded lines⟩

80 In the oldest English, the grammatical distinction of words as masculine, feminine and neuter, was marked by difference of endings, and difference of declensions.

Nouns ending in -**dom**, as *freedom* (freedom) were masculine, nouns ending in -**ung**, as *gretung* (greeting), and in -**nes**, as *godnes* (godness), were feminine, and some diminutives in -**en**, as *mægden* (maiden), and *cycen* (chicken), were neuter ; *wife* and *child* were originally neuter ; *tongue, earth, week,* &c. were feminine, and *star, sea, tear,* &c. were masculine nouns.

Adjectives and many demonstrative and indefinite pronouns, (*he, the, this, such, an, some,* &c.) were declined in three genders, and agreed with the substantives to which they were joined in gender as well as in number and case

81. After the Norman Conquest, adjectives and adjective pronouns lost most· of their case-suffixes in the three genders, so that the older distinctions could not well be kept up. In the fourteenth century the genders of nouns were exchanged for mere marks of sex, names of males being of the *masculine* gender, those of females of the *feminine* gender, and the names of inanimate things of the *neuter* gender ; so that, strictly speaking, the so-called *genders* in modern English do not belong to the *words* at all, but only to the objects they represent. The only *genders* in English are in the Pronouns.

82. There are now three ways of distinguishing the masculine and feminine.
I. By the use of suffixes.
II. By composition.
III. By using distinct words for the name of the male and female.
Only the first method comes under the head of grammatical gender.

I —GENDER MARKED BY DIFFERENCES OF ENDINGS.

83. *A.*—Teutonic Suffixes.

These are now no longer in general use.

We have a trace of two old English suffixes to mark the feminine : (1) -en, (2) -ster.

Vix-en (O E. *Fyx-en*), the feminine of fox (M.E.

vox), is the only one we have preserved out of a tolerably large number once in common use in the oldest English, as

Masc.	Fem.
ælf (elf).	ælf-en (she-elf).
câs-ere (emperor).	câser-en (empress).
munec (monk).	munec-en (nun).
theôw (man-servant).	theôw-en (maid-servant).

In the fourteenth century the feminine in -en is rarely met with.

The change from o to i is regular when compared with the old English **god** (god), **gyd-en** (goddess), and **wulf** (wolf), **wylfen** (she-wolf)   Cp. Ger. *Fuchs, Fuchs-inn*.   This change is brought about by the addition of the original vowel in the syllable -en.   Cp. **gold** and **gilden**; **cock** and **chicken.**[1]

The suffix -ster exists in spin-ster. This is not strictly a feminine noun, because it does not correspond to a masculine spinner, but is merely restricted to an unmarried woman.

It originally meant a female spinner, as in the following passages :—

"Let the three housewifely *spinsters* of destiny rather curtail the thread of thy life "   *The Gull's Hornbook.*

"And my wyf at Westmunstre that wollene cloth made,
   Spak to the *spinsters* for tô spinne hit softe."
                                       Piers Plowman, A. Pass. v. 130.

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries we find

---

[1] This change of the root-vowel (produced by assimilation of two vowels) is called, by German grammarians, *umlaut*

sempster, songster, huckster, and tapster
used as feminine substantives :—

> " Wassel, like a neat sempster, and songster *her* page
> bearing a brown bowl"   BEN JONSON

> " The tapper of Tavystocke and the tapsters potte."
>   JACK JUGGLER, p. 68, *Ed. Roxb. Club.*

> " The backster of Baldockburye with *her* bakinge pele (*rod*)."
>   *Ib.*

In the oldest English feminine nouns ending in
-estre (-ster), corresponded to masculines in -ere
(er).

Masc.	Fem.
bæc-ere (baker)	bæc-estre.
hearp-ere (harper).	hearp-estre
hopp-ere (dancer)	hopp-estre
rēd-ere (reader)	rēd-estre
sang-ere (singer)	sang-estre
seám-ere (sewer).	seám-estre
tæpp-ere (barman).	bæpp-estre.
webb-ere (weaver)	webb-estre.

In the fourteenth century the Norman-French suffix
-ess began to replace the English -ster, though the
older form lived on for some time side by side with
its foreign substitute

In Wicliffe we find *sleestere* and *sleeresse* (a woman
slayer), *dwellstere* and *dwelleress* (female dweller), *singster*
and *singeresse* (songster). The employment of **webster**
and **songster** (Wicliffe), **huckster** (Trevisa), **shep-
ster**, **backstere** and **brewstere** (Langland's " Piers
Plowman "), **beggestere** (Chaucer), as masculine
substantives shows us that even at this early period
(Middle English) the force of the suffix was con-

siderably weakened, and its origin obscured by the frequent use of the new ending -ess.

In the seventeenth century the following hybrids (containing the English -ster and the Norman-French -ess) made their appearance, song-str-ess, seam-str-ess, huck-str-ess, spin-str-ess (Howell), tap-str-ess (T. Heywood)

The suffix -ster now merely marks the agent, as, ~~maltster~~; often with more or less a sense of contempt or depreciation, as, gamester, punster, trickster, youngster.

A large number of words with this suffix, very common in the Elizabethan period, have gone out of common use : *drugster, hackster, lewdster, oldster, roadster, &c.*

84. In the oldest English -a marks the masculine, and -e the feminine gender.

Masc.	Fem.
ass-a (ass).	a-s-e
mag-a (kinsman).	mag-e
nef-a (nephew)	nef-e.
rǽg-a, rǽha (hart).	rǽg-e.
webb-a (weaver)	webb-e.
wicc-a (sorcerer).	wicc-e.
widuw-a (widower)	widuw-e.
han-a (cock).	hen (= henn-e).
gát, (goat).	gát-e.
wulf (wolf)	wylf (= wylf-e).
hláford (lord).	hláfdig-e.

In the thirteenth century -a was weakened to -e, consequently there was no distinction in form between the masculine and fe . . , l... . b., we be r   , 'r... m ''q r'''   e w..,   (t i u a.e. .u   i(an. , ' te n.a e   '' l't. Plowman.")

F

Witch was of the common gender up to a very late period.

> "Your honour is a *witch*"
>   SIR WALTER SCOTT, *Fortunes of Nigel*, 2.

Wizzard has no connection with witch, but is the O.F. *guisc-art*, a wise man

Widower is a new formation from the feminine *widow*, it occurs in "Piers Plowman" (B IX 174)

Neve (= nef-a) gave way in the thirteenth century to *nephew* (M E *neveu*, *nevu*, from O F *nevou*, Lat *nepos*), but the old feminine nifte was kept up to a much later period.   ᐧ ᐧ

85 *B* —Romance Suffixes.

(1) -ess (Fr *-esse* M Lat *-issa*).   The Latin *-issa* makes its appearance before the Norman Conquest in **abbudisse**, abbess   Before the middle of the fourteenth century, the Norman-French -ess occurs only a few times as the ending of Romance words that had already found their way into the language. **Cuntesse** (countess) is found as early as 1140, **clergesse** occurs about 1210, **hostesse** and **emperesse** about 1278, **charmeresse** and **maystresse** (mistress) in 1340.

In the time of Wicliffe and Chaucer, this suffix established itself in the language as the ending of feminine nouns, being added to English as well as Romance roots.

Wicliffe has -ess for -ster in **dawnseresse, frendesse, neighboresse, techeresse, thralesse.** He uses -ess in many substantives that had no -ess in Norman-French, as **cosynesse, devouresse, prophetesse, servauntesse, spousesse.**

In the Elizabethan period the number of words in -ess was far greater than at present, this shows that the suffix is now restricted in its application- ᐧ We no

longer retain **waggoness, rectress** (Chapman),
doctress (Stanyhurst), **neatress** (Warner), **fos-
teress** (Ben Jonson), &c

One form is now frequently used in both genders,
as *singer, dancer, cousin, spouse,* &c.

In modern English, **-ess** is the ordinary suffix of
the feminine, and it is added both to native and
borrowed words, as **goddess, murderess, ac-
tress, baroness.**

a The suffix **-ess** is added to the simple mascu-
line as **baroness.**

b The masculine ending is sometimes dropped
before the **-ess**; as **sorceress** from **sorcerer.**

c The masculine ending is shortened before the
addition of **-ess**; as **actress** from **actor.**

Duchess is from O F *duc-esse, duch-esse*
Marchioness is formed from M L *marchio*
Mistress = O F and O E *maistresse* from *maister* = *master*
and *mister*
Lass is perhaps a contraction of *laddess*

(2) **-ine** in **hero-ine**; and in **landgrav-ine** and
margrav-ine, from the German **landgrave** and
margrave.

(3) **-a** in **donn-a, infanta, sultana, signora.**

(4) Lat **-trix** from Latin nouns in **-tor** occurs in
some nouns taken directly from the Latin, as **ad-
jutor, adjutrix, testator, testatrix.**

Empress was originally *emperice,* Fr *imperatrice,* Lat
acc *imperatricem*
Nurse = M E *nurice, norise,* Fr. *nourrice,* Lat acc *nu-
tricem*

II. GENDER DENOTED BY COMPOSITION.

86. In the oldest English we find instances of a general term compounded with an attribute, as *man-cild* — *manch-ild* — *cærl-fówl* — a *mæle* fowl (bird), *a fígen, a lá-et b*, *a fú ú*, with *t*, *a girl*, a female friend.

In the fourteenth century we find *knave-child*, *boy-; mayde-child*, girl (Trevisa); *men-syngers, wymmen-syngers, mæle child female here, che here. here he, he-*
,' *.l* *,*

In Modern English, we use

(1) **Male** and **female** as male-servant, female-servant; male-cat, female-bee.

(2) **Man, woman,** or **maid,** as man servant, woman-servant, or maid-servant. Sometimes **man** is added to the feminine, and **woman** to the masculine to mark contempt, as man-milliner, woman-titan.

(3) **He** and **she** occur mostly in the names of animals, as he-goat, she-goat.

This last method was not employed in the oldest English, and did not come into use before the fourteenth century, and then only in the names of animals.

In the Elizabethan period **he** and **she** were used as nouns.

   " The proudest *he*."—SHAKESPEARE

   " These *shes* were nymphs of the chymney "
                                        FULLER.

It is used as late as Dryden's time.

   " Another *he*"—*Abs. and Achit.*

III DIFFERENT WORDS FOR THE MASCULINE AND
FEMININE

87. The use of distinct words for the masculine and
feminine, as *father*, *mother*, &c. does not belong to
grammatical gender.

88. A few correlative terms, apparently distinct,
are etymologically connected.

Masc.	Fem
lad.	lass (= lad-ess)
lord.	lady (a final *e*, denoting the fem has been lost)
nephew.	niece (Cp. Lat. nepos, nep-tis).
king.	queen (from the root *kin*, the primitive meaning of king = father, queen = mother)

89. The rule that the feminine is formed from the
masculine is violated in the following words, in which
the masculine is formed from the feminine:—

(1) **Bridegroom** (from **bride**) = the bride's man ;
groom = *goom*, O.E. *guma*, E.E *gome*, a man. There
was an E.E. *grom* = boy.

(2) **Widower** (from **widow**). *See* § 35, p. 19.

(3) **Gander** (from **gans**), the original form of
goose).

In the O E *gandr-a* (= *ganr*a* = *gans-a*), the a is the sign
of the masculine ; d is merely a euphonic addition after n, and
r represents a more original s.

(4) **Drake** is a compound from the root **end** (a
duck), with an obsolete suffix -ra*ke*, signifying *king*.
(Cp. the suffix -rick in *bishopr ck*)

II.—NUMBER.

90 English, like most modern languages, has two numbers, **singular** and **plural**.

Some languages, as French, have only one mode of forming the plural. In English, we have various ways of denoting the plural, one only of which (the addition of **s** to the singular), is in common use.

In the oldest English there were several plural suffixes, **-as, -an, -a, -u (-o): stan-as** = stones, **steorr-an** = stars, **hand-a** = hands, **lim-u** = limbs. The most common of these was the suffix **-an**. After the Norman Conquest these were reduced (in the thirteenth century) to **-es, -en**; and finally the termination **-es** or **-s** became the ordinary sign of the plural

The suffix **-as** was originally the plural sign of only̅ *one* declension of masculine nouns, as fisc (fish), smith; pl, fisc-as, smith-as. It is now the only *living* suffix which is employed when we borrow new nouns and inflect them in the plural All other plural endings are merely the relics of a former period in ˈ, ˈ ˈˈ(, ˈ ˈ ˈ , , , ˈ ˈ ˈ ˈ ˈ ˈ ˈ ˈ ˈ ˈˈ
 ˈ , ˈ (ˈ ˈˈ (ˈ , , ˈ ˈ ˈ (ˈ ˈ ˈ
-es (later **-us, -ys, -is,)** and still remained for the most part a distinct syllable.

> " His *sones* and his *doughtres,* bothe I mene "
> Occiᴇᴠ ᴇ, *De Reg Prin* 620.

> " To heere *Goˈtus wo. dus* thei han forborn "
> *O L Miu p* 226̅

> " Her *bodyus* wer lyke *dragonys*,
> Hor *tayles* wer lyke *schorpyonys*,
> They had *naylys* on her *knocus*,
> That wer lyke ankyr *hokys* "
>
> *Tundal*, 41 *ed* 1843.
>
> " His life
> That vanisht into smoke and *cloudes* swift "
>
> SPENSER, *Faerie Queene*, I. XI. 54

In the fourteenth century, words of French origin were the first to thrust out the **e**, and adopt the simple suffix -s (or -z)

This loss of **e** brings the letter -s into immediate contact with the final letter of the singular, and causes the following phonetic modifications.—

a If the singular noun ends in a **flat consonant**, a **liquid**, or a **vowel**, -s has the sound of z, as tubs, lads, stags, hills, hens, feathers, days, &c

b. If the singular ends in a **sharp consonant**, -s is pronounced sharp, (as in *mouse*,) as traps, pits, stacks, &c (For the reason of this see § 63, p. 45)

As far as the spoken language is concerned, it would be more correct to say that the plural is formed by adding **s** or **z** to the singular.

The fuller form -es (which is retained -e' in the sing. 1, t ob' to be retained when the singular ex s in a sib in t or j a sound (s, z, x, sh, ch, j), as gas-es, glass-es, wish-es, priz-es, fox-es, church-es, eg-es, judg-es.

Nouns of pure English origin, whose singulars end in -f, -fe, pr...ly r... ... 'ca... 'c) ... l, ... f V ... 1 ... P 1. ... ...'... -es, .. lea', leaves, w...', wives, wolf, wolves.

This change of f to **v** is not known before the eleventh century In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries we find it taking place in the *dative case* of nouns, *wuf* (nom), *wuve* (dative), and

in the plural of adjectives *def* (sing) *deve* (pl) deaf It seems
that f between two vowels was pronounced as v. Cp. O.E.
hæfod, E E *hevæd*, M E. *heed*, head, &c.

[several lines illegible/faded]

Remains of older Plural Formations.

91. Plural formed by Vowel Change. The
chief changes are—

Sing.	Plural.
a.	e.
oo.	ee.
ou.	i.

S ng	Plural
man, O E man	men, O E. men.
foot, O E fôt	feet, O,E fêt
goose, O E gôs	geese, O E gês.
tooth, O E tôth	teeth, O E têth.
mouse, O E mûs.	mice, O E mŷs.
louse, O E lûs.	lice, O E lŷs.
cow, O E cu.	kn[-ne], O E cŷ.

In these words the primitive suffix s has been lost together
with a preceding vowel, which modified the root vowel Thus
the old pl of *boc* (a book) was *têk*, which stands for a more
primitive *bocis* This change of vowel was not limited to the
plural, but took place in the dative of all these words, as, *boc*
(nom) *bêk* (dative).

Breeches, breeks, had for its oldest plural *brêc*,
M E *brěek*, formed by vowel change from *brôc* *Bj rŗ*,

fyrg, tyrf, were once the plurals of *borough* (O.E. *burh*), *furrow* (O.E. *furh*), *turf* (O E. *turf*).

92. Plurals in -en (O E. -an), as ox, oxen.
Hosen (English Bible), shoon (Shakespeare), are more or less obsolete. Spenser has eyen (eyes), and foen (foes). In a work written about 1420 we find *been* (bees), *een* (eyes), *fleen* (flies), *pesen* (peas), *toon* (toes).

In the oldest English, plurals in -en were exceedingly common, in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries they became still more numerous because the older plurals in -a, -u, became first -e, and then -en[1]

In the fourteenth century they became of less frequent occurrence, and in the northern dialects only *eyen, oxen,* and *hosen* were in common use.

Children, brethren, and **kine** did not originally form their plurals in -en (-n).

Children.—The oldest plural was cild-r-u, which became (1) child-r-e (and childer)[2], (11) child-r-en (and childern).

"The *childer* are pretty *childer*"
BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight of the Burning Pestle*, Act. 1. Sc 2.

In M E we find *calvr-en* (calves), *eyr-en* (eggs), and *lambr-en* (lambs): the last two are found as late as 1420.
"Late *lamber*" = late lambs.
PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie*, p 145, l. 154.

Brethren was (1) brøthr-u, (2) brothr-e, brethr-e (brether), (3) brethren, brethren.

_____

[1] For proof of this, see O E. Hom first series, pp. xxvii.—xxii , second series, p xiv ; Ayenbite of Inwyt, pp. xi-xxv.
[2] The E E. -re became M E. -er. Cp. alre = aller, (of all).

The old *brether* is found very late. "These be my
mother, *brether*, and sisters" (Bishop Pilkington, died
1575). *Brethers* occurs in the *Romance of Partenay*.

The *e* in brethren comes from the dative *brēther*
In E E we find *dehtren*, in M E *dexter*, originally *dohtru*,
the dative singular was *dēhter*

Kine (M.E. kin, ken) is a double plural   See
§ 91, p. 72.

> "Fat and fair *ky* "
> *Cursor Mundi*, p 259, 1 4566

Kine has had a collective sense (like *pease* and T E.
hose), ever since the sixteenth century.

> " *Kine* or oxen "
> FITZHERBERT'S *Husbondrie*, A D 1598

93 Some words, originally neuter, take no plural
sign, as in the oldest English . deer, sheep, swine.
neat.

These words have acquired a collective sense, cp the use of
fish, fowl, frust, &c ; *gross, fathom, foot*, &c.

94. Substantives having two Plural forms, with different meanings.

Brothers (by blood) , brethren (of an order or
community)

Cloths (sorts of cloth) , clothes (garments,
clothing).

Dies (a stamp for coining) , dice (for gaming).

Pennies (a number of separate coins); pence
(collective).

Pennies = O E. *penegas*, (E.E , M E. *pennyes, pans. pens*),

as singular and takes a plural, as, two *sixpences* But this is
a comparatively modern usage

> " A hundred pieces of *vi pence.*"
>
> > *The Book of Princes,* p 164

The forms pence, mice, &c show that the O E. s had only
the sharp sound in *mouse* and not the flat sound in *pens*

Peas (taken individually, the plural of *pea*), **pease**
(taken collectively)

Pease O E *pisa* (pl *pesen*), is the correct form.

> " *Pease* are an excellent seede "
>
> > FITZHERBERT's *Husbondrie,* p 15

In M E we find the plurals *peses* and *peses* The s in *pease*
i·ḷ-·· . ··ḷ ···-·· '(. | · · ᴉ · | ʃ c.ɪ ʿ·ᴉᴉ ·ᴉ ᴉᴉ ʿ , ᴉ ·ᴉ ᴉᴉ

plural peas.

> "A red berry as big as a *pease*"
>
> > GERARDE's *Herbal,* p 53.

> " Benes, *peses* "—PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie,* p 149, l. 8

When two forms of a word occur, they must either get different
meanings and so be utilised, or else one of them must drop out
of use. Cp *morrow* and *morning, latest* and *last, &c.*

95. False Plurals.

The **s** in **alms, riches, eaves,** is not a sign of
the plural any more than it is in *largess, lachess,* &c
These words are however treated as plural, although
singular in form.

Alms is a curtailed form of the O.E *almesse,*
pl *almessen* (M E. *almesse, almes,* T.E. *almous,* pl
almessen, almesses). Cp. *alms* deed ,

> " Angels desire *an alms.*"
>
> > M. '\ ' ·· .ᴉ·, ᴉ·. ·ᴉ· · ·
> >
> > ·· · \   ·   .   .

Riches.—M E *richesse,* pl *richesses,* O.F. *richesce,*
Fr. *richisse.*

"Yet all the *ruches* in the world that *is* riseth of the ground
    by God's sending "

"Yet ?, . f .   . . . of . . . .   .   "
    li·r·l . o . ; . ·r . ur . , a O.u . l . l ., . e   H. · ·, , 8.

Eaves = O.E. *yfes, efese*, margin, edge; (M.E. *eves,
ovis;* pl. *eveses*), pl. *efesen* (cp. T.E. *esen-droppers*).

> " Ysekeles in *eveses* "
>   *Piers Plowman*, B p. 315

96. Plural Forms treated as Singulars.

Some plural forms are frequently treated as sin-
gulars; as, **amends, bellows, gallows, means,
news, odds, pains, shambles, tidings, wages,
thanks, small-pox** (= *small-pock-s*, cp. *pock-*mark).

> " A little *amends* "
>   *Spectator , Piers Plowman*, B. p 338.
> " A *gallows* "—*Esther*, v. 14.
> " The *bellows blows*."
>   SHAKESPEARE, *Pericles*, I. 2.
> " A *means* "—*Winter's Tale*, IV 3.
> " By this *news*;" " this *news*."
>   *Measure for Measure*, III. 2
> " A fearful *odds*."—*King Henry IV.*, Part III.
> " That *tidings*."—*Julius Cæsar*, IV 3.
> " A *shambles* "—WHITLOCK, p. 97.
> " A *thanks* "
>   BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, vol. I. p. 5.
> " The small-*pocke* "—A BOORDE

The singulars *amend, gallow, mean, pain, tiding, wage, thank,*
are found in older writers

97. Nouns used only in the Plural.

(1) These are the names of things that consist of
more than one part, or form a pair.

a. Parts of the body, and bodily ailments.—*Lights, lungs, intestines,* &c ; *measels, mumps, staggers, yellows* (the jaundice).

b. Articles of dress.—*Drawers, trowsers, breeches, mittens,* &c.

c. Tools, instruments, &c —*Scissors, shears, tongs, scales,* &c.

(2) The names of things considered in the mass or aggregate.—*Ashes, embers, lees, molasses,* &c.

98. Some **Nouns** change their meaning in the mass or Plural ; as, *beef, beeves, copper, coppers, spectacle, spectacles,* &c.

99 Foreign Plurals.

Foreign words, when naturalized, form their plural in the ordinary English way, as, *indexes, memorandums, automatons, focuses, beaus,* &c. Others, imperfectly naturalized, still retain their foreign plural

	Sing.	Plural
(1) Latin.	formula	formulæ
	datum	data
	radius	radii
	species	species
(2) Greek.	axis	axes
	phenomenon	phenomena
(3) Romance.	monsieur	messieurs
	bandit	banditti
(4) Hebrew.	cherub	cherubim
	seraph	seraphim

Some of these have two plurals with different meanings as, *indexes* and *indices* , *geniuses* and *genii* , *cherubs* and *cherubim.*

Automatons and and the ellie effe . . . follow were origi-nally a re ies. We s y ... (le ... . .. .ad used at the f... . tras ... es.

100. Plural of Compounds.

In compounds the plural is formed by **s**, as, *black-birds*, *paymasters* When the adjective (after the French idiom) is the last part of a compound, the sign of the plural is added to the noun, *attorneys-general*, *courts-martial*, *knights-errant*, &c ; cp the prepositional compounds, *sons-in-law*, *lookers-on* In a few titles the last usually takes the plural sign, as *major-generals*, *lord-lieutenants* A few others have both terms in the plural, *knights-templars*, *lords-justices*, *lords-appellants*

We say *master-bakers*, but Robert of Brunne has *masters mareschals*

Compounds in -**full** were once strictly adjectival (cp. *baleful*, &c), and took no plural.

> " Three *sponsful* of vinger "
> A BOORDE
> " A *potful* bony "
> PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie*, p 95, l 968
> " Syx hondred *syppuol* knytes "
> ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER, l 3523
> " Thre *shypful* of knytes "
> *Ib.* l 2418.

III—CASE

101. The different forms which a noun (or pronoun) takes, to mark its relations to other words in a sentence, are called **Cases**.

The moveable or variable suffixes that express these relations are called *case-endings*

Case means a *falling* The nominative was considered by the old grammarians as the upright form, from which the other

forms were *fallings off,* or declinations (Cp the term declension)
The Romans applied the term *case* to the nominative (*casus
rectus*), not so the Greeks, from whom the idea was borrowed

The oldest English had six cases: **Nominative,
Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative,** and
Instrumental.

In Modern English we have the subject-noun or
Nominative case, the object-noun or *Objective case,* and
ᵗʰᵉ *Possessive case.* The *Nominative* and *Objective case*
of nouns have the same form, and both are without
case-endings. The *Objective* includes the *Accusative*
or direct object of a transitive verb, and the imper-
sonal object or *Dative case,* generally expressed by
the noun with the preposition *to* or *for* before it. It
is sometimes called the *Indirect object*

The true Dative (of nouns and pronouns) is seen
in such expressions as, *he bought* his brother a farm,
I made me *great works, woe worth the* day; *woe is*
ᵗʰᵉ; me-*thinks,* me-*seems,* &c. The infinitive of
purpose is a dative in " *Their feet make haste* to shed
blood."

We have preserved the O.E genitive -s, but all other endings
have gone, e for the dative singular, and um for the plural have
disappeared
In the thirteenth century a final e represented both the
singular and plural dative The loss of this final e in the
fourteenth century, left the dative and accusative undistinguished
in form from the nominative

Possessive Case.

102. The **Possessive** case, unlike the Nomina-
tive and Objective, is marked by a distinct form. Our
possessive is the representative of the older genitive,

but we can see how much its force is weakened when
we find as late as 1420 such expressions as *strengthes
qualites* (the quality of strength), *cannys knottes* (the
knots of cane), *vynes rootes* (roots of vines).

In the oldest English there were various declen-
sions, as in Greek and Latin, and different genitive
suffixes for the singular and the plural.

The suffixes for the singular in the first period were -es,
smith-es (smith's), -an, *steorr-an* (star's) -e, *rod-e* (rood's) -**s**,
sun-a (son's)

For the plural they were -a, as, *smith-a*, *rod-a*, *sun-a*, -ena,
as, *steorr-ena*

In the thirteenth century the suffixes of the genitive in the
singular were -es and -e; 'in the plural -ene (-en), -e, and
the modern form -es which often replaced the others.

In the fr steenth century -es (-s) is the end narr s the er
ti h th nd   i   s -en, -enn ;i   a   r
l e   1 ¿² ,   er   r ,   1   1b .   r   .
Ge w   e   r   n i   a i   r   i

103. The O E. suffix -es was at first limited to the
singular of certain masculine and neuter nouns, but
was afterward extended to the feminine.

This ending -es (-us, -ys, -is) made a distinct
syllable in the older stages of the language.

> " And by the *popes* mediaeval."
>   CHAUCER   *Man of Lawes Tale*, l. 234.
> " And cristendom of *prestes handes* fonge "
>   *Ib* l. 377.
> " The *nightes* char (car) the stars about doth brmg."
>   LORD SURREY
> " Larger than the *moones* sphere "
>   SHAKESPEARE, *Midsum. Night's Dream*, 11 1.

Formation of the Possessive Case.

104. The **Possessive case** (singular and plural) is formed in the written language by the suffix -s. In the *spoken* language it has the same phonetic modifications as the plural -s. (*See* § 90, p 71, § 63, p 45).

The apostrophe in the singular marks the elision of the e of the old -es

The general use of the apostrophe in the singular is not found much before the end of the seventeenth century It was probably employed to distinguish the possessive case from the plural number Its use may have been established from a false theory of the origin of the suffix -s, which prevailed from Ben Jonson's to Addison's time, namely, that it was a contraction of *his*, hence such expressions as —

"For Jesus Christ *his* sake."—*Prayer Book*

"The emblem is *Camerarius his*" = (Camerarius's)

WHITLOCK, p 52

We find this corruption towards the close of the fourteenth century Trevisa has "*egles hys nest*" = eagle's nest.

-is, another form of -es was sometimes written apart from its noun, and hence perhaps the confusion of his with -is, or -es

In the thirteenth century we find his for -is (-es) intentionally used after proper names.

Nouns forming their plural by vowel change, or by the suffix -*n*, take the possessive sign after the plural ; as, men's, oxen's, children's.

Nouns forming their plurals in -s were thought to be without the case-sign ; hence in writing the possessive came to be marked by the apostrophe, as **boys'.**[1]

When a singular noun ends in an s sound, the possessive sign is dropped, and the apostrophe (often

[1] This came about in the seventeenth century, through the notion that the s in *boys* was the sign of the plural number, and not of the possessive case.

G

omitted) marks its absence; as, for *justice'* sake, for *conscience'* sake, your *highness'* love, &c.

In foreign proper names (of two or more syllables) ending in s, the possessive is unchanged. Cp. *Moses'* law, *Thetis'* wrath, *Olympus'* top

In common English names we generally sound an additional syllable; as *James's* (pronounced *Jámz-ez*).

<blockquote>
"<i>Peerssis</i> bernes," "<i>Peerssis</i> wyf."
<div align="right"><i>Piers Plowman</i>, C. p 176</div>
</blockquote>

105. In compounds the possessive suffix is added to the last term, *the son-in-law's house, William-the-Conqueror's reign.*

Sometimes we find the principal substantive inflected as in the older stages

<blockquote>
"For his <i>grace's</i> sake the cardinal."—FORD.

"Constance the <i>Kynges</i> sister of France"
= The King of France's sister.—FABYAN.

"<i>Eadwardes kynges</i> leave"
= King Edward's leave

"On <i>Willíames</i> daye the yonger <i>Kynges</i>"
= On King William the younger's day.—O E <i>Miscell</i> p. 145.

"<i>Sǽberhtes</i> deáth east seaxna <i>cyninges</i>"
= The death of Sæberht, king of the East Saxons.—<i>Bed.</i> ii. 5.
</blockquote>

The Case absolute.

106. In the oldest period the **dative** was the absolute case. About the middle of the fourteenth century the **nominative** began to replace it. Pecock (A.D. 1449) has a few instances of the *dative* · "**Him** *it* writing *and not* weeping," = *he knowing it and not forbidding it* (II. 325). Milton occasionally imitates the Latin construction, as "*him* destroyed." In the use of the passive participle we have introduced *being*, as, "this *being done*," which was in the sixteenth century, "this *done*."

107. Declension of the Old English Noun.

I.—MASCULINE AND NEUTER NOUNS FORMING THE GENITIVE IN -es.

wulf, wolf; scip, ship; word, word

Singular

	Masculine.	Neuter	
Nom. } Voc. }	wulf	scip	word
Gen.	wulf-es	scip-es	word-es
Dat.	wulf-e	scip-e	word-e
Acc.	wulf	scip	word
Inst.	wulf-ē	scip-ē	word-ē

Plural

Nom } Voc. }	wulf-as	scip-u	word
Gen.	wulf-a	scip-a	word-a
Dat.	wulf-um	scip-um	word-um
Acc.	wulf-as	scip-u	word
Inst	wulf-um	scip-um	word-um

II.—FEMININE NOUNS FORMING THE GENITIVE IN -e.

gifu, gift; dǣd, deed.

Singular.

Nom. } Voc. }	gif-u	dǣd
Gen.	gif-e	dǣd-e
Dat.	gif-e	dǣd-e
Acc.	gif-e	dǣd (dǣd-e)
Inst.	gif-ē	dǣd-ē

Plural

Nom } Voc }	gif-a	dǣd-a, dǣd-e
Gen.	gif-a (gif ena)	dǣd-a
Dat.	gif-um	dǣd-um
Acc.	gif-a	dǣd-a, dǣd-e
Inst.	gif-um	dǣd-um

G 2

III —STEMS IN -n

steorr-a, star, tung-e, tongue, eâg-e, eye

Sing	Masc	Fem	Neut
Nom } Voc }	steorr-a	tung-e	eâg-e
Gen	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Dat. } Inst }	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Acc	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-e

Plural			
Nom } Voc }	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Gen	steorr-ena	tung-ena	eâg-ena
Dat. } Inst }	steorr-um	tung-um	eâg-um
Acc	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an

IV —STEMS IN -n

brôthor, brother.

	Singular		Plural.
Nom Acc } Voc. }	brôthor	Nom Acc } Voc }	brôthr-u, brôthor
Gen	brôthor	Gen.	brôthr-a
Dat } Inst }	brêthor	Dat } Inst. }	brothr-um

108. Declension of Nouns in the thirteenth century —

I —wulf, wolf; scip, ship, word, word

	Masc		Neut	
Nom } Voc }	wulf	scip, schip	word	
Gen.	wulu-es (wulf-es)	scip-es	word-es	
Dat.	wulu-e (wulf-e)	scip-e (scip-en)	word-e	
Acc.	wulf	scip	word	

Plural.

Masc.

Nom. Acc Voc.	wulu-es (wulf-es)	
Gen	wulu-e (wulu-en, wulu-ene)	
Dat.	wulu-e (wulu-es, wulu-en)	

Neut

Nom Acc Voc	scıp-e (scıp-es, scıp-es)	woıd, (word-es)
Gen	scıp-e (scıp-ene, scıp-es)	word-e (word-es)
Dat.	scıp-e (scıp-en, scıp-es)	word, (word-es)

II.—Hand (hond), hand, dede, deed

Singular

	Fem		Fem
Nom Acc Voc }	ded-e		hond, hand
Gen	ded-e		hond-e
Dat.	ded-e		hond-e

Plural

	Fem		Fem
Nom Acc Voc }	ded-e (-en, -es)		hond-e (-en -es)
Gen	ded-e (-es)		hond-e (-es)
Dat	ded-en (-e, -es)		hond-en (-e, -es)

III.—Sterr-e, star, tunge, tongue; eʒe, (eye).

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem	Neut.
Nom } Voc	sterr-e	tung-e	eʒ-e
Gen	sterr-e(-en,-es)	tung-e (-es)	eʒ-e (-es)
Dat.	sterr-e (-en)	tung-e (-en)	eʒ-e (-en)
Acc	sterr-e (-en)	tung-e (-en)	eʒ-e

Plural

	Masc.	Fem	Neut.
Nom } Voc	sterr-en(-e,-es	tung-en (-e, -es)	eʒ-en (-es)
Gen.	sterr-ene	tung-ene	eʒ-ene
Dat.	sterr-en (-e)	tung-en (-e)	eʒ-en (-e)
Acc.	sterr-en(e,-es	tung-en (-e, -es	eʒ-en (-es

IV.—The words fæder (fader), brother, suster, moder, doȝter, (dohter), in the singular take no genitive inflexion. In the dative we find sometimes a final -e   In the plural we find nominatives in -es, -en, -e; as fadere s, brother e s (brothers), dohtre s, sostre s, brother e n, brethr e n, dohtr e n, deht en, sustr en, modr e n, brothre, dohtre, &c.

In the thirteenth century the genitive plural has sometimes the suffix -ene (-en), but more often -es

The dative plural ends in -en, -e and sometimes in -es.

In the fourteenth century there is but little trace of the dative singular or plural

The nominative plural of nouns ends in -es (-is, -;) -us), without respect to gender, though many plurals in -en are found.

The genitive singular ends in -es (-us, -ys).

Some feminines keep up the old genitive form in -e.

The genitive plural for the most part is like the nominative plural   We have still a trace of the old genitive plural -ene, (-en). See § 102, p. 80.

CHAPTER VIII.

Adjectives.

109ᵛ The English adjective has lost all the older inflexions of *number*, *gender*, and *case*

In Chaucer's time, and a little later, we find (1) a final e used to mark the plural, as, "the *smale* fowles ;" (2) a final e to denote the definite adjective, "the *yonge* sonne," "his *halfe* cours."

Cp. "And quhen sche walkit had a lytill thrawe
Under the . . . .
. . . .
. . . . "
JAMES I OF SCOTLAND, *The Kingis Quhair.*
about 1423.[1]

In the phrase "in the olden time," we have perhaps a trace of the definite declension.

The word ones does duty for an inflexional e in the plural, as M.E, "these tweyne *olde*" = these two old ones

110. Adjectives used as substantives form their plural regularly, as *wantons*, *calms*, *shallows*. In the fourteenth century only Norman-French adjectives used substantively could be thus inflected, as, *viles*, *preciouses*, native words formed their plural by

---

- [1] This is a Scottish imitation of Chaucer.

adding the final e, as *suete* (sweets), *soure* (sours).
In the sixteenth century we find this new method
extended to English words, as *yonges* = young ones
(L. Andrewe, in *Babees Book*, p 231)

When an adjective of Norman-French origin qualified a
n? . . - f---- f------? *- -? . ' 1 - .-?? -c? - Ch . - has *conns*
? ·· .   ?   , · ?   · · 1 Traces
of this construction are found in Tudor English.

III. In **alderliefest** = dearest of all (S?]akes-
peare, 2 *King Henry VI.* I 1), we have one very late
instance of the old genitive plural suffix **-er. Alder**
= M E. *aller*, E E. *alre,* O E. *al-ra*, the gen pl. of
all.

> "Now Jesu Christ be your *alder* speed "

> " Adam owre *aller* fader "
>   *Piers Plowman*, B p 298
> " Sweetest *alre* thinge "
>   O E. M----ll - -cc

112. **Declension of the O.E. Adjective.**

STRONG OR INDEFINITE DECLENSION.

Singular

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc }	blind	blind	blind
Gen	blind-es	blind-re	blind-es
Dat.	blind-um	blind-re	blind-um
Acc	blind-ne	blind-e	blind
Inst	blind-e	blind-re	blind-e

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc }	blind-e	blind-e	blind-u
Gen.	blind-ra	blind-ra	blind-ra
Dat.	blind-um	blind-um	blind-um
Acc.	blind-e	blind-e	blind-u

WEAK OR DEFINITE DECLENSION.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut
Nom Voc. }	blind-a	blind-e	blind-e
Gen Dat }	blind-an	blind-an	blind-an
Acc	blind-an	blind-an	blind-en

Plural

Masc., Fem., Neut.,		
Nom. Voc. Acc. }	blind-an	
Gen.	blind-ena	
Dat.	blind-um	

113. In the thirteenth century we find the following forms of the strong declension.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc. }	blind	blind-e	blind
Gen.	blind-es	blind-re (-e)	blind-es
Dat.	blind-e (-en)	blind-re (-e)	blind-e
Acc.	blind-ne (-e)	blind-e	blind

Plural for all genders :—

Nom Voc }	blind-e
Gen.	blind-ere (-re, -e)
Dat.	blind-en (-e)
Acc.	blind-e

The strong declension has for the most part . . . . . . ,
. . . . -e-n, ...
-e (or -en)

Sometimes the definite form takes the inflexions of the in-
definite declension.

In the fourteenth century we find a final e used to mark (1)
the plural, and (2) the definite form and vocative case of the
adjective   (See § 109, p 87)

Comparison of Adjectives.

114 **Comparison** is that change of form which
the adjective undergoes to denote degrees of quantity
or quality.   Adverbs that have sprung from adjectives
may be compared.

There are three **degrees of comparison,** the
positive or simple form of the adjective, the **com-
parative** formed by adding -er to the positive, the
superlative by adding -est to the positive.

This rule applies (1) to all words of one syllable,
(2) to some words of two syllables, especially those
with the accent on the last syllable.

Orthographical changes :—

(1) When the positive ends in -e, the comparison is formed by *[illegible faded text spanning several lines]*

cruellest; cheerful, cheerfuller, cheerfullest.

Adjectives of more than two syllables, and most adjectives of two syllables are compared by **more** and **most.**

The words **more** and **most** are pure English words, but the use of them to express comparison is due to Norman-French influence This mode of comparison came into use towards the end of the thirteenth century, and was frequently employed by the writers of the fourteenth century

But even at this time, adjectives of any number of syllables might be compared by -er and -est. The writers of the Elizabethan period paid very little regard to the length of the adjective.

"The *delectablest* lusty sight and *movingest* object me thought it was."—NASH's *Lenten Stuff,* p 9, ed. 1871.

115. Double comparisons are not uncommon in Middle and Modern English. Some of these double forms arose out of an attempt to strengthen the comparison, as *more kinder, most straitest.* Others arose through the comparative degree of some irregular forms being mistaken for the positive.

"The *lesser* lights."—*Gen.* 1 16.
"*More better.*"—*Temp* 1. 2.
"The *worser* of the twain "—WARNER.
"*Lesse* gifts and *lesser* gaines I weigh them not."
                    .HALL's *Satyres,* Book II 2

Some numerals, pronominal words, prepositions, &c., have a comparative suffix, -ther (-ter), as o-ther, whe-ther, af-ter, un-der.

Traces of an old superlative m are to be found in form-er-and for-m-ost. (See § 117, p. 96.)

116. Irregular Comparisons.

I WITH VOWEL CHANGE IN THE COMPARATIVE
AND SUPERLATIVE.

Old, elder, eldest (O.E. *eald, ald, yldra, eldra, yldest, eldest*).

Elder and **eldest** are archaic, and are replaced by the more recent forms, **older** and **oldest.**₄

Cp O E. *lang, lengra, lengest, strang, strengra, strengest*
This change is caused by the original vowel before the suffix -s and -st

Nigh, nigher, nighest, (next).

Near, nearer, nearest.

O E. *neâh, neh, nyra, nearra, neâhst, nêhst.*

M.E. *negh, nigh, nerre, nere, nerrer, neghest, neyest, next, nest.*

The true representatives of the O E. forms are *nigh, near, (nigher), next*

Near is a comparative form, nearer is a double comparative

" The Knyst asked leeve to ryde by an other way that was *nere* (= nearer)."—*Gest Rom*, p 34.

" You're early up, pray God it be the *near* "
GREEN'S *Friar Bacon*. See *Macbeth* II., 4.

Next is a contracted form *h + s = k + s = x* Cp M f.
hext = highest, coxcomb = cock's comb.

Late, latter, last.

Late, later, latest.

O E. *læt* (late), *lator, latost, lætemest.* In the thirteenth century we find *late, lattre, latist (latst).*

The distinction between latter and later, latest and last, is quite a modern one

" The sea gravel is *lattest* for to drie,
    And *lattest* may thou therwith edifie."
                        1420 PALLADIUS, p 14, ll 363-4.

Last arises by assimilation out of *lat-st.* Cp
best = O E. *bet-st*, *gospel* = *godspel.*

(Rathe,) rather, (rathest).

O.E. *hræth, hræthra (hrethra), hrathost.*

Rathe in Milton means *early*, as,

> *—The *rathe* primrose "—Lycidas*
> " The *rather* born lambs "—SPENSER
> " Late and *rathe.*"—Piers Plowman B p 132
> ' ᛏ. ı ı. ᛁᛁ ɯᵉ   ᛁ. ' —Trevisa iii p 145
> ' ı 'ı ᵃᵉ   ,, ,' '—PALLADIUS, p. 66.

II. FROM OBSOLETE ROOTS.

Good, better, best.

O E. *gôd, betera, (betra,) betest, betst.*

The positive of *better* is **bat** = *good*, which root is
found in O.E. *betan*, 'to make good,' 'amend ,' and
boot, in ' to boot.'

For vowel change in better see elder; for best see last.

Bad
Evil } **worse, worst.**
Ill

O E. *yfel, wyrsa, wyrrest, wyrst.*

Wor-se, wor-st, are fórmed from the root *weor*,
bad

The **-se** = **-re (-er)** Cp **less,** O E *læs-se*

In the phrase "the weaker had the *wer*" (Harding), we
have the remnant of the Danish *værre.* Spenser uses *wis* =
worse.

"Was neuer *warre* o moder born."

Cursor Mundi, p. 68, C.

"Was neuer *worre* of moder borne."—*Ib.* F.

Little, less, least.

O.E. *lytel, læssa, læsest, læst.*

The root of *less* and *least* is not the lit of 'little,' but *las*, 'infirm.' Cp. Goth *lasiws*, 'weak.' The vowel-change is like that in *better.*

Much, more, most.

O.E. *micel, mâra, mæst.*

Much is from *mycel*, through the forms *michel, muchel, mochel.*

Mo-re contains the root *mah*, or *magh*, to be great Cp. *mai-n*, O.E. *mag-en.*

O.E. *mucel*, M E. *muchel, muche, moche* = *r*eat, large.

"He sende it was not half *much* mow."—C*A*t*c*-*RAVE

"A *much* berd" = a great beard

Sir G and the G *K*n*v* | 1.

Mo (*moo*), a shortened form of *more*, is used by Elizabethan writers for *mere.* Gill makes *mo* the comparative of *many* ; *more* the comparative of *much.* The Lowland Scotch has a similar distinction.

III. From Adverbial Roots of Time and Place.

Far, farther, farthest.

O E. *feor, fyrra, fyrrest*, M.E *fer, ferre*, (*ferrer ferrest*

Farther. The correct comparative is farrer = M. E **ferrer.**

"þan mon (must) he gyf light

Als *fer* als þe some dose and *ferrer*"

HAMPOLE, P. of C.-p. 246.

Far (M.E *ferre*) = 'farther,' occurs in *Winter's Tale*, IV 4.

The **th** in **farther** has crept in from false analogy with **further**, M.E. *forther, ferther*.

Furth-er (O.E *furthor*, superlative *furthmest*), is the comparative of **forth**.

"He went hym *forth* and *forther* soght."—*C. Mundi*, C. 1. 4107.

"He went *forth* and *further* sost "—*Ib.* T.

"He went *forth* and *ferder* soght "—*Ib* G.

Ere, erst. The root of **e-re** is the adverb *â, ever.*

In O E we find *se erra* = the former, *se æftera* (the after) = the latter.

In the thirteenth century we find *erure, erore* = former. O.E. *Misc.*, p. 173.

Af-ter, latter, second (compare *after*-thought), is from *af* = *of, off*.

Fir-st is the superlative of **fore.** See § 117, p. 96.

For change of vowel see § 83, p 63, § 91, § 72.

Hind-er, from **hind,** as in *behind*. *Hinderest* occurs in Chaucer.

Inn-er, from **in.** In the thirteenth century we find *innerest*.

Neth-er, from **neath** in *beneath*. *Nethereste* is used by Chaucer (*Astrolabe*, p. 4).

Ov-er is from the root **ove** (O.E. **ufe** = up), in *above*. Wickliffe has *ôberere* (a double comparative).

As late as the seventeenth century *over* and *upper* are opposed to *nether*

"The *upper* part . shutteth close upon the *nether*"—HOLLAND's *Pliny*, p. 241.

"Also as it is in the partes of the grete worlde that they beeth so i-ordeyned and isette, that the *over-meste* of the *nether* kynde touche the *nether-meste* of the *over* kynde, as oistres and schellefisch . . . in bestenæ kind."—*Trevisa* II , p. 181

Upp-er, from up. *Upperest* and *overest* are found in the fourteenth century.

Utt-er, **out-er**, from out (O.E. *ut*).

117. Superlatives in m.

Tne O.E. **for-ma** (cp. Lat. *pri-mu-s*) = 'first,' from the root *fore*, survives in **for-m-er** (comparative form with superlative sense), and **for-m-ost**.

"The *forme* yere."—PALLADIUS, p 71, 1 291
"The *formast* barn that sco him bare "—*C' Mun'* ⚓   p 58
"The *first* child that ever scho bare "—*Ib* G
"Of alle oure *former* fadris that evere were or aren "—*Babees Book*, p 47.

The suffix **-most** (O.E. *m-est*), contains the superlative endings -m and -est, as in **in-m-ost**, **ut-m-ost**, **up-m-ost**, **hind-m-ost**, &c.

Further-more (further-over in Chaucer), is simply a compound like *ever-more*

For the **Indefinite Article** see Numerals, **One**.

For the **Definite Article** see Demonstrative Pronouns.

NUMERALS.

118. Numerals may be considered under the three following divisions, **Cardinal**, **Ordinal**, and **Indefinite** Numerals.

I.—Cardinals.

One = O.E. *an*, M.E. *an, a, on, oon, o, oo*
The Indefinite Article **an** preserves the original form of the numeral. The **n** falls off before a con-

ȝonant, and becomes a   (Cp. "*mine* and *my*.")   **A** =
one in "all of *a* size," &c.

> "Alle salle that be *ane* in company,
> And als a saule and *a* body "
> > HAMPOLE's *P. of C*, p 228

An in ȝeventeenth century writers is used before words be-
ginning with h
' Yea, I may say of Gardiner, that he had *an* head, if not *an*
hand, in the death of every eminent Protestant "—
> FULLER, *Church History*, ed 1845, iv p 183

In the phrase "such *an* one," one must have had its M.E.
pronunciation *oon*

None and **No** are the negatives of an and a.

Two, **twaᵗn** 'O F ꝛ, ꝗ *in* ·--ꞃ)

Ʒhreꞓ (O l *ꞓꞃ* , *iꞃʒ* ,

The root is *thri* or *thar*, 'to go beyond,' 'cross' Cp Lat.
tres and *trans*.

Four (O.E. *feƀwer*, *feÞer*, cp. Lat *quatuor*) has
lost a th.

Five (O.E. *fif*), has lost a nasal. Cp.·Lat. *quinque*,
Gr. πέντε.

Nine (O.E. *nigon*, M.E. *neȝhen*).
A *g* representing an older *v* has been lost. Cp. Lat.
novem.

Ten (O.E. *týn*, *tén*).
Ten has lost an *h* or *g*. Cp. Gothic *taihun*, Lat.
decem.   The original form·therefore was *tehen*, or
tegen.   Cp. **twenty** (O.E. *twen-tig*).

Eleven [O.E. *endlif* (*endleof*), *ællefne* (*ændlefene*)].
e = *en* = one ; *lev* = *lif* (perhaps) = ten.

Twelve (O.E. *twelf*).

twe = **twa** = two; **lve** = **lif** = ten.

Sometimes l = t, and f = g, hence lif = tig, (in O.E. *twentig* = *twen*-ty)

Some philologists say that hf is from O E *lefan*, Goth. *laiban*, to leave; O.E *láf,* Goth. *laiba,* a remnant. Hence *eleven = one over ten* , *twelve = two over ten.*

The numbers from 13 to 19 are formed by the suffix -teen (O.E. *týne*) = ten. Those from 20 to 90 are formed by suffixing ty (O.E. *tig*) = ten.

Hund-red. In O.E. we find *hund,* and *hw:téhntig* = 100. Hund signified *ten* originally.

Hundred and **thousand** are substantives (originally neuter).

119. Distributives express how many at a time, as, one by one, one and one, by twos, two each, &c.

By twos. In O.E. the dative *bt twám* would be used.

In the fourteenth century we find *be hundredes* &c. Chaucer, *Astrolabe,* pp 11, 19, has *by on, by two,* &c. *By and by = one* by one ; *on by on* is used by Lydgate.

120. In **Multiplicatives** the cardinal number is placed before the greater numeral, as eight hundred.

They may be expressed (1) by the English suffix -fold, as two-fold. Cp O E. *an-fald* = simple ; (2) by the Romance suffix -ple (-ble), double (*duple*), treble (*triple*).

In M.E. we find -double used as a suffix instead of -fold.

(3) by the word times, as "three times one are three;" (4) by the adverbial form, as, "twice two," "thrice four."

Both O.E. *begen* (masc.), *bá* (neut.) Cp. O E. *-twégen,* two.

In the thirteenth century we find the neuter form (*bey, ba, bo, boo*) more common than the masculine *beyn*.

Both contains the root bo (or *ba*), and the suffix -th.

In O.E. we find ba joined to *twa* (two), as *bâtwâ, butwa, butu*. Cp. our "**both two**."

In the thirteenth century we find a plural *bathen*, or *bothen*, and a genitive plural *ba-re*, and in the fourteenth century *bother* and *bothers* are used as genitives.

II. Ordinals.

121. The **Ordinals**, except **first** and **second**, are formed from the cardinal numbers by the suffix -th, as **four-th, fif-th, six-th**, &c.

In O E. fifth, sixth, and twelfth, were *fifta, sixta*, and *twelfta* In O.E. th had, probably, only the *flat* sound in *bathe*, and therefore could not follow a sharp mute.

Third = O E *thridda*, M E *thridde*

In seventh, ninth, tenth, thirteenth, . . . nineteenth, an n has crept in through Northern forms of Norse origin. Cp *tighe* = tenth.

In eigh-th (O E *eaht-otha*), a t has disappeared

First is the superlative of *fore*, see § 116, p 95.

Second, Fr *seconde*, Lat. *secundus*, has replaced the O.E. **other**.

O E. other = one of two ; that ân = the first ; that other = the second   In M E these became (þ) that oon and that . other, (2) the ton (toon, tone), and the tother.

> " Tua pilers thai mad, o tile *the tan*,
>   *The tother* it was o merbul stan "
>   *C. Mundi*, C p. 96, ll. 1532-3.
> " Two pileres then made, of til *that oon*,
>   *That other* was of marbul stoon."
>   *Ib* T.

III. Indefinite Numerals.

122. All. O.E. *eal, eall,* Genitive plural *al-ra,*
E.E. *al-re,* M.E. *aller, alder, alther.* See § 111, p 88.

In the Lowland Scotch dialects we find *allers,*
cp *bothers,* § 120, p. 99.

Many. O.E *manig, maneg,* is another form of
the root *magh* in *more.* See § 116, p. 94

In O E we have *fela, feola* (M E. *fele*) = many.

Many (O E. *mænigeo*), a crowd, is a substantive in
some expressions, as, "a-great *many.*"

> " O thou fond *many* "
>   SHAKESPEARE, 2 *Hen. IV.* i. 3.

Few. O E *feáwa, feá,* E.E. and M.E. *fa, fo,*
fon, fone, feawe, few, O.E. *lyt* = few.

CHAPTER IX.

Pronouns.

123. The **Pronouns** are among the oldest parts of speech, and consequently have undergone much change, so that their original forms are greatly altered. Notwithstanding all this they have preserved more relics of the older inflexions than any other part of speech, as case-endings in hi-m, he-r, ou-r, &c , suffixes marking gender in it, what, &c. They also illustrate the substitution of one demonstrative for another, see remarks on she, they, &c. p. 109. They show how neuter forms may take the place of the masculine and feminine, as in this, &c.; how one case may replace another, as in you for ye ; how the singular may take the place of the plural, as in you for thou ; how relative pronouns are lost and replaced by interrogatives ; how new plurals replace older ones in others, selves ; how impersonal pronouns are formed, as, somebody ; &c.

124. When a pronoun stands alone, as the subject or object of a verb, it is said to be used substantively ; when it modifies a noun it is said to be used adjectively. The Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, Relative, and Indefinite Pronouns have often this double use.

125. The classes of Pronouns are (1) Personal, (2) Demonstrative, (3) Interrogative, (4) Relative, (5) Indefinite.

I PERSONAL PRONOUNS

I Substantive.

126. The **Personal Pronouns** have no distinction of gender. There are two persons, the person who speaks, called the *first* person, the person spoken to, the *second* person

The person or thing spoken of is sometimes called the *third* person (he, she, it) It is properly a demonstrative pronoun and is inflected like other old demonstratives for gender, as well as for number and case

He = that man, she = that woman, it = that thing.

In E. E. the definite article or demonstrative the is used instead of he before *that* "mihi Lauerd is *the* that Juliane on leuethṣ̣̂ = mighty Lord is *he* that Juliana believes in—(*Jul.* p. 65) "Ich am *the* that spec" = I am *he* that spake—(*Ib*)

127 THE PRONOUN OF THE FIRST PERSON.

Singular.

	Modern English.	M E	E E	O E
Nom.	I	I, ich, ik	Ic, ith, Ih	Ic
Gen.			min	min
Dat.	me	me	me	me
Acc	me	me	me	mec, me

Plural.

Nom.	we	we	we	we
Gen.			ure	ûser, ûre
Dat.	us	us, ous	us	ûs -
Acc.	us	us, ous	us	ûsic, ûs

128. THE PRONOUN OF THE SECOND PERSON.

Singular.

Modern English.	ME		E E		O E.
Nom. thou	thu, thou		thu		thu
Gen.			thin		thin
Dat. thee	the		the		the
Acc. thee	the		the		thee, the

Plural.

Nom. ye, you	ȝe, yhe, ye		ȝe		ge
Gen.			eoure, ewr, ȝure		eower
Dat. you	ȝou, yhou, you, yow		eow, ew, eu		eow
Acc. you	ȝou, yhou, &c.		ew, ow, suw		eowic, eow

There was a dual of the first and second personal pronouns in O.E, which died out before A.D 1300

129. Remarks on the pronouns of the first and second person :—

(1) **I.** The guttural has fallen off, as in many words originally ending in c or ch. See § 37, p. 64.

Traces of an older form Ich, (which still lives on in the south-west of England), occur in old dramatic writers, as, *chill* = ich will (Shakespeare, *King Lear*). In early English we find *icham*, I am; *ichabbe*, I have, *ßulluch*, I will not; *nefßich*, I had not.

"*Icham*, a gentylman of much noble kynne,
Though *Iche* be clad in a knaues skynne"
        * HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure.*
"*Ich* am an old man."
        A.D. 1565, AWDELEY, *The Fraternity of Vacabondes,* p. 8.

(2) **Me** (dative) is still in use before impersonal verbs, me-thinks, me-seems, &c.; after interjections,

"woe is me," "well is him;" to express the in-
direct object, *to me* or *for me*,

> "Tell *me* the truth," "he plucked *me* ope his doublet"—
> SHAKESPEARE, *Julius Cæsar*, 1 2

In M E we find more frequent traces of the dative, especially
with the adjectives *leof* (*lief*), *loth*, &c. and the verb *to be*.

> "And lever *me* is be pore and trewe."
> *C. Mundi*, T I 4375.

Traces of this idiom occur in the dramatic writers of the six-
teenth and seventeenth centuries.

The verb *had* often replaces the older *were* (subjunctive).

> "*Me* had rather "—*Rich* ii iii 3.
> = M E   *Me* were lever.

> "*You* were best take my coxcomb."
> *King Lear*, I. iv.

> "*You* had best "—*Ib.* ii p 208.

> "*Him* had ben lever to be syke"
> FABYAN, p. 270.

> "*You* were best hang yourself"
> BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, II. p 305.

In the sixteenth century the *nominative* case replaces the *dative*
as, "thou wert better," &c. for "thee were better," "we had
best," = "us were best" Bacon uses "I think good," for
"me thinks good"

> "Better *I were* distract"
> *King Lear*, IV. 7.

We no longer use *mine, thine, ours,* &c as genitives, but only
as possessive pronouns   In M E we find a trace of the genitive
in such expressions as, "maugre *myn*" (*owres* &c) = in spite
of *me*, (*us*, &c) "*oure* aller" = all of *us*, &c.

See ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, § 133.

(3) **Thou** has been replaced by *you*, except in the
poetical and religious language.

From the fourteenth down to the seventeenth
century, we find *thou* used to express (1) *familiarity*
towards friends, (2) *superiority* towards inferiors; (3)
contempt or *anger* towards strangers.

"We maintain that *thou* from superiors to inferiors is proper, as a sign of command, from equals to equals is passable as a note of familiarity, but from inferiors to ... .

(4) **Ye**, although the true nominative, has been replaced by dative or objective *you*. In the English Bible, the older use of *ye* as nominative, and *you* as dative or objective, is always carefully observed.

"*Ye* have not chosen me, but I have chosen *you*"
                                                    John xv 16.

In Sackville, Shakspeare, and Milton, we find *ye* (in an unaccented position) sometimes used instead of *you*, in the objective case [1]

130. THE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.—SINGULAR.

Masculine

Modern English		M E	E E	O E
Nom.	he	he, ha, a	he, ha	he
Gen.		his	his	his
Dat.	him	him	him	him
Acc.	him	him, (hine)	hine, him	hine

[1] *You* does not appear as a nominative, in the written language before the sixteenth century. In the spoken language it was perhaps probably pronounced like *ye*, or the *yea* in *yearn*. Cp. *thank ee* = thank ye = thank you, *look ee* = look ye.

Feminine.

Modern English.	M E	O E	E E
Nom. she	heo, sco	hi, heo, scæ	heo
Gen.	sche, she	hire, here	hire
Dat. her	hire, hir, here	hire, here	hire
Acc. her	hire (hi, heo)	hi, heo, hire	hi
		(hise, his)	

Neuter

Nom. it	hit (it)	hit (it)	hit
Gen. it	his (hit)	his	his
Dat. it	him (hit, it)	him	him
Acc. it	hit (it)	hit	hit

PLURAL.

Nom. they	hi, thei, thai	hi, heo, thei,	hi (hig)
		thai	
Gen	heore, here, her,	hire, heore, here,	hira (heora)
	thair, their	theȝȝre	
Dat them	heom, hem the m	heom, hem, hem	him (heom)
Acc. them	heom, hem,	e , hi , ,	, ,
	tham	hem, theȝȝm	
		(hise, his)	

131. Observations on the Pronoun of the Third Person :—

(1) In Old English there was only one stem, **hi**, from which **he, she, it**, and their cases were formed. The modern declension contains three stems, **hi, sa, tha.**

(2) **He.** In Middle English we find *ha* and *a* = he. Cp. "quoth *a*."

> " 'Rah, tah, tah,' would *a* say ; 'bounce,' would *a* say ; and
> away again would *a* go ; and again would *a* come."
> —*Hen IV.* PART II. III. 2. 303.

(3) **Hi-m** (*dat.*) contains a real dative suffix m. Cp. *who-m*.

(4) **Hi-m** (*acc.*) The old accusative was hi-ne, which began to go out of use in the thirteenth century, and by Chaucer's time had wholly disappeared in the Midland dialect.

> "Heo *hine* bitauhte knyhtes þat duden *him* muchele schonde,
> - þe knyhtes þet *hine* ledden bitauhten *him* þe rode."
> ₌They delivered him to knights that did to him great shame,
> The knights that led him delivered to him the cross.
> *O.E. Miscell.* p. 49.

(5) **She** replaces the older heo, which lasted as late as 1387. It is an altered form of the Old English feminine definite article *seo*, or *sio* (Icelandic *sú*).

> "*Heo* 'nuste hwat *heo* mende, *heo* wes of wytte poure "
> ₌She knew not what she meant, she was of wit poor
> *O E. Miscell* p 85.

(6) **He-r** (*dat.*) contains a dative (fem) suffix -r, (-re).

He-r, (*acc.*), originally dative, has replaced the old accusative *hi* or *heo*

> "Heo cuþeþ *hi* well sone."
> = She will show herself very soon.
> *O E. Miscell.* p 118.
> "He ber *heo* on his schuldre."
> = He bore her on his shoulder.
> *Ib.* p. 49.

(7) It has lost an initial *h*. The final t was originally a suffix of the neuter gender, as in *tha-t*, *wha-t*. Cp. Latin *i-d*, *illu-d*, *istu-d*, *quo-d*.

It is often employed in O.E. where we use there.

> " It es na tung may tell."
>
> C. *Mundi*, p. 84.
>
> " It *ben* the deueles disoures "
>
> *Piers Plowman*, B vi. 56.

(8) It (*dat*) has replaced the true form him.

(9) They is the old nominative plural of the definite article.   It replaced the older form *hi* or *heo-*in the beginning of the thirteenth century in the dialects of the North and North East of England, under the forms *þei*, *þas*, *þai*.

> " Ic nele neuer þe vorȝake, and so *hi* seyden alle.
>
> þo *hi* hedden al þis iherd *heo* were ful son "
>
> = I will never forsake thee, and so they said all,
>
> When they had heard all this they were full sorry.
>
> *O E. Miscell.* p 41

(10) The-m (*dat.*) is the dative plural of the old definite article and replaces the demonstrative hem.

The-m (*acc*) was originally a dative and replaced the older forms *hi*, *heo*, *hem;* the true accusative is *they*, O.E. *thâ*.

> *O E Miscell* p 33
>
> " And [he wule] makie *heo* unfere "
>
> = And he will make them unbold.
>
> *Ib.* p 75.
>
> " And right anoon *thay* token *here* way to the court of Melibe, and token with *hem* some of *here* trewe frendes."—
>
> CHAUCER, ed Morris, iii. p 193.

In the dramatists, '*em* is not a corruption of _them_, but of the older *hem*

(11) The following table shows the origin of *she,*
they, &c. :—

DEFINITE ARTICLE.—SINGULAR

Nom.	Masc.	Fem	Neut
	se (E.E. the)[1]	sco, sio	thæt
	|	|	|
	the	she	that

PLURAL

Nom.	Poss	Dat	Acc.
thå	thåra	thåm	thå
|	|	| °	|
they	their	them	

Obs The following examples show the demonstrative cha-
racter of *they* = those (nom and acc)

        "For *they* carles garre syke a dinne."
                    WARNER, *Albion's England,* p. 118.
        "And *tha* bandes of fyre salle never slack "
        = And those bonds of fire shall never slack.
                    HAMPOLE, *P of C.* l 7177
        "But *thas* prophetus so thyn ar sawen "
        = But those prophets are so thinly sown
                    BARBOUR, *The Bruce,* IV 685.
        "For he had drede of *thas* thre men "
        = For he had dread of those three men
                                Ib VII. 185.
        " *Thas* thre tratouris he has slane."
        = Those three traitors has he slain.
                                Ib. VII. 222.

_____

[1] In O E *the* was only used as an indeclinable relative. In
E.E.,_*the* (masc) and *theo* (fem.) were used as demonstrative
pronouns instead of O.E. *se* and *seo.*

"Ane of *thas* That com for to sla the kyng."
= One of those that came to slay the king
                            BARBOUR, *The Bruce*, VII. 212.

Tho is another form of *tha* and *then*.

                    " þe weore þeos—
            þat weoren in þe pynen of helle"
                    = They were those
        That were in the pains of hell.
                                O. E. *Miscell* p 232.

" Yf ye wille after this do to me so
    As ye have done, ye shalle have alle *tho* " (*them*=coses)
                                OCCLEVE, *De Reg.* 166.

" And *tho* that cannot (beat their husbands), they will
    never let
    Their tongues cease.". . . .
                        HAWES, *P. of Pl* p. 136

            II. Reflexive Pronouns.

. 132. The simple personal pronouns me, thee, &c.
may be used reflexively, as, "I repent me," "get
thee hence," "sit you down."

The word self is usually added to them.

Singular.—Myself, thyself, yourself, him-
self, herself, itself.

Plural.—Ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

Self (O.E. silf), was at first declined as an adjec-
tive along with the personal pronouns, nom. *ic silfa*,
gen. *mīn silfes*; dat. *me selfum*, acc. *me silfne*.

Between the nominative of the personal pronoun
and the word silf, the dative case of the pronoun
was inserted, as: *ic me siif* = I myself, *thu the silf*
= thou thyself; *he him silf* = he himself; *we us
silfe* = we ourselves; *ye eow silfe* = you yourselves;

hi him selfe = they themselves. So we could say
God silf and *God him self.*

These forms are emphatic rather than reflexive.

In the thirteenth century we find the *possessive* pro-
noun replacing the *dative*, as, *I mi self, thu thi self,*
&c. instead of *I me self, thu thi self.* Cp. himself,
themselves, itself, oneself.

Probably self had already come to be considered
a noun ; it certainly was often so treated from the four-
teenth century downwards :—

> " As *thi self* likyth "
> > CHAUCER, *Astrolabe,* pt I. sec 21

> "*Myself* hath been the whip."
> > CHAUCER, *C. T* l 5757

> "Thy manner is to muse and [to] deryse,
> So that sometune *myself* may carry me
> *Myself* knoweth not where ; and I assure ye
> So hath *myself* done now."
> > HEYWOOD, *The Play of the Wether.*

Cp the use of "*myself,*" &c for "I myself," &c.

When **self** was fully established as a noun, it
dropped its old plural e, and took s, as *ourselves,*
&c.

For some time it was without a plural, as *ourself,*
themself, &c.

One's self, (or more properly oneself), is quite
a modern form. In Elizabethan English we find
a man's self = one's self.

In O E, ana (the nom. of *ân,* one,) was used lıke self.
In M.E., we find one used for *self* with the possessive pronoun,
as, "be myne *one,*" by myself (*Morte Arthure,* ed. Brock, p.
125) = "by me *one.*"

An old meaning of self was *same*. Cp. "the *self*
truth" (Becon), and "self-same."

> "The *same self* time"
>   BALE'S *Works*, Park Soc p 23.

> "For other ruffians as their fancies wrought,
> With *self-same* hand, *self* reasons, and *self* right,
> Would shark on you"
>   SIR T. MORE, *ed.* Shak. Soc. p 27.

III. Adjective Pronouns.

133. The **Adjective** Pronouns, sometimes called
Possessive Pronouns, were formed from the geni-
tive case of the personal pronouns, and were declined
like ordinary adjectives.

In modern English the possessive pronouns, though
only used adjectively, are identical in form with the
old genitives of the personal pronouns.

Sing.—**Mine, my; thine, thy; his, hers, its.**

Plural.—**Our, ours; your, yours; their,
theirs.**

Mine, my; thine, thy. The original forms were
mine and thine (O.E. *mín, thín*). The final e is no
inflexion, and only marks the length of the preceding
vowel.

The -n in *mine* and *thine* is an old genitive suffix.

My and **thy** are formed from mine and thine by
the loss of *n*, as no from none, a from an.

Mine and **thine** are occasionally used before
a noun beginning with a vowel, or h ; but this usage
is confined to poetry and the *solemn* style.

IT is very common in the Bible, and in our old
dramatists :—

> "Give every man thine ear, but few thy voice "
> Hamlet, 1. 3

> " Conduct me to mine host."—Macbeth, I 7.

Sometimes mine and thine are used when they follow the sub-
stantive, as,

> " Lordyng myne"—Gest Rom p. 32.
> " Master mine "
> Merry Wives of Windsor, 1. 1 163.

HIS is a true genitive of the root hi.

HE-R (O.E. hi-re), contains a genitive suffix fem. -r.

ITS (O E. kis)   This is quite a modern form, not
much older than the end of the sixteenth century.   It
does not occur in the Bible, it was not used by
Spenser, rarely by Shakspeare and Bacon, but is more
frequently employed by Milton, and had quite esta-
blished itself in Dryden's time as the regular form.
The true genitive of it is his.

> "Tat up at   ,   r   n   t   ,   ..f .\> a>
> l..'.rt .l !   v   ,   l .'.   u   l   l   ',   ,   .l ..l
> .l   . ..   .   .   ', .\. .'.   l '.   ..   '
> par.a'.; r. h..   h.t .t.. :. . v..r., when it is solid
> .,.   .   '., .'   .   , .   ,.: when it waxeth
> r   .   r\   ll   ..l\, /   .>'

In the fourteenth century we find hit = its   This form
kept up as late as the seventeenth century.

> " Of it own accord."—Lear xxv. 5.

" It knighthood shall do worse .it shall fright all it friends."
> BEN JONSON, The Silent Woman, 11. 3

The own = its own, occurs as early as the fourteenth
century, and was in use in the sixteenth century.

"And albeit their trumpery be built up, and reared as high as
    the sky, yea even in a moment, and as it were of the
    own self, falleth it down again."—Translation of Jewel,
    ed. Jelf, p 153.

I

Ou-r, you-r (O.E. *ūr-e, eow-er.*)
These forms contain a suffix -r, which belongs also
to the genitive plural of adjectives. See note on
Alderliefest, § 111, p. 88.

Thei-r has this genitival suffix -r, which also
appears in O.E. *hí-re, heo-re;* M.E. *he-r.* See table,
p 106.

IV. Independent or Absolute Possessives.

134. **Mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours,
theirs,** are used without a following noun

> "Be *thine* despair and sceptred care;
>   To triumph and to die are *mine*"
>   GRAY, *The Bard*

Ours, yours, theirs are *double genitives,* con-
taining a genitive plural suffix -r + a singular suffix
-s. Hers is also a double genitive

T ı . ɡɛ·' ι·ɔ   ɔ   ꜱ . .·.   · ' ꜰ   ' ꜱ · ' ' '   ' ꜰ·ꜰ·ꜰ   ' ,
' ꜰ   · ꜰ   ·   · '   ꜰ · ꜰ   '   \   ·ꜱ   ꜱ · ' ·
ı· · ꜰ' ı ꜰ'   · '·   ·   · ꜱ ·   '   · · ꜱ · · '   · · ıı
influence Cp Swed (old style) *mins, dins,* = mine, thine,
vars = ours, *ers,* = yours
The more ordinary forms in the Southern dialects were *hire,
her* (hers), *oure, our* (ours), &c Sometimes we find *ouren* =
ours, *herem* = theirs.

II.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

135. The Demonstratives are **the, that, this,
such, so, same, yon,** (yond, yonder.)

The (usually called the **Definite Article**), was
formerly declined like an adjective for number,
gender, and case; it is now indeclinable.

SINGULAR.

Masculine

	ME	EE.	OE
Nom.	the	the	se
Gen.	the	the-s, tha-s	thæ-s
Dat.	the	tha-n, the-n	tha-m, thæ m
Acc.	the	tha-n, tho-n	tha-ne
Inst.	the	the	thî, thê

Feminine.

Nom.	the	theo, the	seo
Gen	the	the-re, tha-re	thæ-re
Dat.	the	the-re, tha-re	thæ-rа
Acc	the	tha, theo, tho, th·	

Neuter

Nom } Acc }	the, that	the-t, that-t	thæ-t
Gen. } Dat }		*like the masculine*	

PLURAL

Nom	the,tho,tha,tha;	tha, theo, the	thâ
Gen	the	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thâ-ra, thæ-ra
Dat.	the, (tha, tho,	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thâ-m, thæ-m
Acc.	tha;)	tha, tho, the	thâ

In the second period the article is flexionless in Northern
writers

The old form *tho*, the plural of *the*, is used as late as Warner's-
time   *They* is occasionally found in Tudor English as the plural
of *the*

The, before comparatives, as, "*the* more   *the*
merrier," is a remnant of the old instrumental case
þȳ.   Cp O.E. *thî mare* = Lat. *eo magis*.   It must
be parsed as an adverb when used in this way.

136. That was originally the neuter of **the.** In Northern dialects it replaced the demonstrative *thilk,* and was used before nouns of all genders. Its plurals were (1) **tho** (or *tha*) the pl. of the def. art. ; (2) **thos** (or *thas*) the old plural of **this.**

The **t** in that is the old neuter suffix   Cp. **it, what.**

Those (O.E. *thás*), was at first the plural of **this.** It had established itself, as early as the middle of the fourteenth century, as the plural of *that.*

137 This was originally neuter. As late as 1387 we find **thes** (masc.), **theos** (fem.), **this** (neuter), Lat. *hic, hæc, hoc:*

> *This* is more emphatic than *the,* and was originally equivalent to *the-the*   Cp Fr *ce-ci, ce-la*

These (O E. *thæs, thás,* E.E *thas, theos, thos, thes, these,* M.E. *thes, thees, thise, these*).

The final **e** in *these,* marks the length of the preceding vowel, it is not an inflexion

> The form *these* in M E may have been a new plural formed from *this,* and therefore commonly spelt *thise*

This and **that** sometimes replace the **former** and the **latter** (O.E. *se ærra* and *se æftera*) see § 116, p. 95

This usually refers to the *latter* of two things mentioned, **that** to the *former.*

> "T⋯ ⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯ ⋯ ⋯⋯⋯
> ⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯
> ⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯⋯."
>   POPE, *Essay on Man,* Ñ. 2

138. **Such** (O E. *swilc*, E.E. *swilch*, M.E. *swi k*, *swich*, *swuch*, *sich*, *such*) is a compound of *so* (O F. *swâ*), and *like* (O.E. *lîc*). **Such like** is pleonastic.

We find compounds of *such* in *some such* and *none such*

139. **Thilk** (O E *thylc*) = the like. Cp Lat *ta-lis*

The **like** is used often as a substitute for the older *thilk*.

140. **Ilk** (O E *ylc*) = that like, same

141. **Otherlike** and **other** the like are found in the seven-teenth century

"Chaffe, straw and *otherlike* mullocke "
HOLLAND, *Pliny*, 601

142 **So** (O E *swâ*) is often used as a substitute, for *such*.

"I am wiser than *so*" *i e* a baby —FORD.

143 **Same** (M.E *same*, Gothic *sama*). In the oldest period *same* is a conjunction, as *swa same swa* = the same as; *sam—sam* = whether—or.

Same is joined to **the**, **this**, **that**, and **self** (*e g* **self-same**. See § 132, p. 112)

144. **Yon**, **yond**, **yonder** (O E *geon*, Goth. *jains*, Ger *jener*) = that, *ille*.

"Near *yonder* copse "
GOLDSMITH, *Deserted Village*, 1 136
"Beside *yon* straggling fence "—*Ib.* 1 193

Yon is a derivative from the demonstrative root *ge* (or *ja*).

In O E geon = *ille*; *geond* = *illic* and *trans*.

Yonder (adv) is in Gothic *jandré*

In M E we find *yon* a like *such a*, *each a*, &c ; fiom which probably has arisen *yond-er*

The Scotch still use *yon* substantively

"*Yonder's* a bad man."
BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER II p 400
" *Yon* er theves "—*C Mundi*, C 1 4850
" *3onder* ar theves "—*Ib* T.
" *3ondir* be theves "—*Ib* T.

" Bote take we him ute of *son* den,
And selle we him to *some* chapmen "
                    C Mundi, G ll 4185-6
" Take we him out of *bonder* den
And sel him forth to *some* chapmen "—*Ib* F
" Take we him out of *that* den
And selle we him to *those* chapmen "—*Ib* T.

III.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

145. The **Interrogatives** are **who, which, what, whether,** with their indefinite compounds **whoever, whatever, whichever.**

146. **Who** (masc. and fem) is only used of persons. Its neuter is **what.**

			O E	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem	Neut
Nom	who	what	hwá	hwæt
Gen	whose	whose	hwæs	hwæs
Dat	whom	what	hwam, hwæm	hwæm
Acc	whom	what	hwone, hwæne	hwæt
Inst	[why]	hwí	hwí

	E E		M E	
	Masc and Fem	Neut	Masc. and Fem	Neut.
Nom	hwa, wha, wa	hwat, hwet, what, whæt	wha, hwo, wo, ho, quo	what, wat, huet
Gen	hwas, whas, was	as masc	whas, whos, wos, hos	as masc.
Dat	hwam, whan, was	as masc	whom, wham, wom	as masc.
Acc	hwan, wan, hwam, wham	hwat, whæt, what	whom, wan, won	what, wat, huet

Who-se was originally of all genders. It can be used absolutely, as, "*whose* is the crime?" The **s** in *whose* is a genitive suffix, as in *hi-s.*

Who-m is a dative like **hi-m**. It is now also accusative, the older acc. *hwone* having been replaced by it in the thirteenth century.

147. Wha-t was originally neuter (like *tha-t*), and never masc. or fem It got its present usage as early as the beginning of the thirteenth century in the Northern dialects.

What for = *what sort of.*

> "*What's* he *for* a man*"
>
> PEELE, ed Dyce, p 383

148. Whe-ther (O.E. *hwæther*, M E *whether*, *wher*), which of the two.

> "God cupid, or the keeper, I know not *whether*,
> Unto my cost and charges brought you thither."
>
> BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight of the Burning Pestle*, i. 2.

> "*Whether* of them twain did the will of his father."
>
> *Matt.* xxi. 31.

For the suffix -**ther**, see *Three* § 118, p. 97.

We find in the seventeenth century *whether-so-ever*, in the fourteenth *whether-so*, *whether-ever*.

149. Which (O.E. *hwilc;* E E. *whulc, whulch, wuch;* M.E. *wich, wuch, which, whilk*) contains the **wh** of *who, what*, and -**lc** = O.E. **lîc** = like. Cp. *qua-lis.*

> "Tele us *hwuch* is helle"—*O E. Hom* i. p. 249
> = Tell us *what* hell is *like.*
> "Moyses seide, Lord *wuch* is þi face, let me hit iseo"—*Vernon MS*

IV.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

150. The **Relative** Pronouns are who, which, what, that, as.

In the oldest period, who, which, and what, were not relative, but interrogative pronouns, whose, and whom, were established as relatives as early as the thirteenth century, but **who** was much later in getting a relative force, and did not come into common use before the end of the sixteenth century.

151. **Who**, as a relative, is not recognized by Ben Jonson, who speaks of "one relative *which.*"

In ' Palladius on *Husbondrie,*' A D. 1420, we find *who* used as a relative with a neuter antecedent.

Who (= he who, whoever) replaced the E.E. *the the,* or *the that* = he that.

" *Who* steals my purse steals trash."—*Othello,* III 3 15.

In this sense who = *quisquis,* is an indefinite pronoun.

In M E. the is sometimes joined to whose and whom.

Who (and its cases) are often followed in M E by that.

152. **Which** at present relates only to neuter antecedents, but this is comparatively a modern restriction.

"Our Father *which* art in heaven."

In M E. which is frequently joined to the, that, as —*the which, which that, which as,* &c.

153. **That**, originally the *neuter singular* relative, now agrees with singular and plural antecedents of all genders.

That, during the twelfth century, began to supply the place of the *indeclinable* relative the, and in the fourteenth century it was the ordinary, though not the

only relative. In the sixteenth century, which often supplied its place, and in the seventeenth century, who was frequently employed instead of it. At a later period (Addison's time), that had again come into fashion, and had almost driven who and which out of use.

That (O E. *ðætte* = *ðæt* þe), is sometimes used in the sense of that which, or what.

"We speak *that* we do know, and testify *that* we have seen."
St. *John*, iii 11

154. What = *that which*, refers to singular and neuter antecedents   Its true genitive is whose.

"Nebuchadnezzar, the king, made an *image* of gold, *whose* height was threescore cubits" — *Dan* iii 1. See Milton's *Par Lost*. Bk. 1 l 2,

What that, that what, what as, are archaic compounds

155 Who-so, what-so, who-so-ever, what-so-ever, which-so-ever, are indefinite, like the Latin *quisquis, quicunque.*

O.E. swá hwa swá = E E *swa-swa, wha-se*, M E *who-so*, O.E. swá hwylc swá = which so, whichsoever.
In the sixteenth century we often find what-som-ever = M.E. *what-sum-ever ; sum = as, so* is Danish

"To *quat* contre *sum* that thou wend "
C *Mundi*, C. 1 1149.

"To *quat* contre *so* thu wend."
Ib G.

156. Who-ever, what-ever, which-ever, are relative and interrogative. They do not occur in the oldest English.

157. As (O.E. *eall-swa*, E.E. *alswa, alse*, M.E. *ase, alse, als, also*), has a relative force after such, same, that.

Such — as = O.E *swylc — swylc* = such — such. E E. *swilc — als.*

V —INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

158. The **Indefinite Pronouns** are **who, what, some, one, any, none, no, aught, naught, each, every, either, neither, other, else, enough, sundry, certain, several.**

159. Who = *anyone, some one,* has an indefinite sense in some old expressions:

> "Not as *who* saith by authority,
> But by the way of intreaty "
>   *The 4 P's.* in *O E. Plays,* ed. Hazlitt, I. 373.
> "As *who* should say "—*Macbeth,* III. 6.

160. What is indefinite in

> "I'll tell you *what* now of the devil."
>   MASSINGER, *Virgin Martyr,* iii. 3

What not, what else (M.E. *elles what*).

In O E. *kwa, â-hwa* = anyone, *hwat, â-hwat* = *aught, anything* In the thirteenth century we find what treated as a substantive in an *hwat* = *one thing,* which gave rise to E.Æ *sum-what, other-what ,* M.E. *much-what, little-what, many-what,* modern English somewhat.

There may have been some confusion between *aught, unght ;* and *whit* See § 164, p 125

> "A strawnge *watt*" (= wight.)
>   *Coventry Mysteries,* p 294
> " T ⸱⸱⸱ ⸱ f ⸱⸱⸱ ⸱⸱⸱ ⸱ ⸱⸱ "   ʃ⸱⸱⸱ ⸱⸱ʃ⸱ ⸱⸱⸱ ⸱⸱⸱⸱⸱⸱, r 8.
> " ⸱ ⸱⸱   ⸱ ⸱ ⸱ ⸱ ⸱ ⸱ ʃ⸱ ⸱   41
> " ⸱ ⸱⸱ ⸱ ⸱   ⸱⸱ ⸱ ⸱⸱, ʃ ⸱ ⸱ ⸱ ⸱
>   SPENSER, *Shep. Cal.* (July)

161. Some (O.E. *sum;* M.E. *som, some,* aliquis, quelque), is both singular and plural, but is mostly used before plural nouns.   It has the force of the indefinite *a, a certain, some one;* **some—some** = *one—another,* *some—others.*

Other-some = some others, is used by Shakespeare in the *Comedy of Errors,* iii. 2

'Framing unto some unwholesome sores plaisters, and
applying *other some* where no sore is "—HOOKER, I I I

In O E and E,E *sum* was declined like the strong declension of adjectives, see § 112, p 89

In M E we find pl *sume, summe, some*
As late as the fourteenth century we find *some* used in appostion with a pronoun or noun, as *sume we* = some of us

P·· ···*···* — ··*···*· ·· *····*· ··· ·· *··* ·· ····· ··· —

| · · ·   ·   · ,·· ·   · ·   ·' · ,· , (·\·,··
|·· ·   ,·· *·* ·· · ·· , ·   ···*   ·

Compounds of **some** are **somebody, something, someone, somewhat.**

Somebody seems to have got into the language through the use of **body** for **wight** (person)

"*A bodye* thynketh *himselfe* well emended in his substaunce
and ryches, to whom hath happened some good goubbe
of money "—ERASMUS, *Apophthegms,* englished by
Udall, ed. 1542, p. 142a

No body occurs in *Piers Plowman* —B. xvi. 83, p 292

Something has in a great measure replaced **somewhat.** This usage is as early as the thirteenth century

Some one arose in the early part of the fourteenth century, and replaced *sum man* , it is also used where in M E. *oon, one* = *some one* was employed.

All and some (M.E **al** and **sum**) = *all and one, all and singular,* is used by Dryden.

"— you must march both *all and some*"—PEELE, *Edw I.*

In the sixteenth century it often appears as *whole and some, all or some.*

Sometimes we meet with a redundancy of indefinites —

And the nature of all creatures is contained in *some certain*

··   ··*· ·*·   ·   B·· · P··*·*·,· ·*·
"·,   ·· · ·· **·** ·· ·· ,·,(irdpurv, ·l··· (· ·*·,·· *··*
such other like —PILKINGTON, p. 20.

162 **One** (O.E. *ân*, M.E. *on*, *oon*) is the numeral one with extended usage. It has a genitive **one's**, and a plural **ones**.

In the O E and M E. *one* was declined according to the strong declension. See § 112, p 89.

It has various usages :—

(1) In "*one* says" it replaces the O E. *man*, M E. *me* (Ger *man*, Fr. *on*). This use is as early as the fifteenth century.

(2) It has an indefinite sense like the Latin *quidam*, Greek τις, especially before proper nouns, as, "*one* Simon a tanner" (*Acts* ix 43) This use is found in E.E. See *St Juliana*, p. 5.

"*One* in a certain place testifieth "—*Heb* ii 6
"Also *oon* told hym that oon of his frendes hadde ispoke euel by hym "—*Trevisa*, iii 317.
See *Piers Plowman*, B xx 157, 161, p 374

(3) It is equivalent to *some one*, see *King Lear*, i. 3.

(4) It is also used as a noun = *person*, *thing* (M.E *wight*, *thing*). This usage is found in the fourteenth century.

(5) It is used instead of repeating the noun.

(6) **The one** = *the first*. See § 121, p. 99.

(7) **One** = *the same*, as, "It's all *one*, " "*one* and the same "

For one we sometimes use *a man*, *they*, *you*, *people*
In M E me = *men*, is used for *one* (Fr. *on*) ; but with a *singular* verb

  "The vyne also *that* sayen hath that nature,
  That vynes *yf me* brenne, or white or blake,
  And kest hem into wyne, *me* may be sure
  The wyne coloure after the vyne make."
      PALLADIUS, *Husbondrie*, p 200

The expression as one that = M E *as he that*, E E. *as
the that*, *as a wuht that*; *as thing that* —See *Juliana*, pp 4,
5, 8, 20, 21

163 None, no = O.E. *nân* = *ne ân* = *not one*.

No is formed from none by the dropping of
ne. (Cp my and mine) None is used absolutely,
that is, without a following noun : " I have none."

In none other (*Acts* iv 12 , *Deut* v. 7), we have the M E
use of *none* for *no* before a vowel

Oth. . . . .

No one   . . .   . , .

one) but it evidently replaces M E. *no man, no wignt*.
Compounds of no are nothing, nobody. Ford
has nobody's else for nobody else's.

164. Aught = anything (O E. *âwiht, âwuht,*
. . . ô . . ôh*. I* . . . .
. .   . . , . .   O. . .   . .
. .   . . p . .

Naught *. .* I . . . .
. .   . . r ot . . . .
forms of aught.

Awhit is another form of aught Cp *anywhit, everywhit* As
not = nowhit = naught, *not a whit* is pleonastic
That nawight = *not* is seen from the following
versions of the same line.
. . . . ni . . . . ; '—*C Mundi*, C 1 4396.
. .   . . —*Ib* G
. .   . . —. T

In the following passages *nawght* is replaced by *nathing*,
nothing.

" Ne sal thou *nawght* thar-wit win "—*Ib* C l. 919
" Ne sal thou *nathinge* thar-with wyn."—*Ib* F.
Whit = aught, in
       " The devil have they *what* else "
              THE SITES, *O E. Plays*, ed Hazlitt, 1. p 428

165. **Any** (O.E. *ǽn-ig*; E.E. *æni, æi, ai*; M.E. *eny, ony, any* = *ullus*), has an adjective form like *dirt-y*, and the stem is *an* = *one*. The negative of any is none. In O.E. and E.E. we had a true negative, n**æ**nig = *nullus*.

In O E any was declined like *one*   A plural in -e was in use in the fourteenth century.

The genitive *anies* = *anyone's* occurs in Warner's *Albion's England,* p 200

Compounds of any are anyone, anybody (M.E *any wight, any persone, any man*), anything.

166. **Each** = O.E. *æ-lc* = *â-ge lic*, E E. *elc, elch, euch*, M.E. *uch, ych, ech, ilk.*

Each is a compound of **â**, *ever*, and **lic**, *like.* (Cp. *which, such, &c*). In E.E. and M E **each** was followed by **an, a, on,** (= *one*). This use has survived in **each one.**

Each other besides being equivalent to *each the other,* see § 170, signifies *every second, each alternate.*

"I   . l .   ;   .   .
.   .   \ . / . .| ?

167. **Every** (E E. *éever-ælc,* M.E. *ever-ich, ever-ilk*), is a compound of ever and each. It does not exist in the oldest period

Every, as late as the seventeenth century, had a substantive use as in the older periods

.   .   . .   . . ,   / .   . . i   . ?
. / .   , ,   .   ii   .   . .   w.
.   l . .   . ·   me   . , i l ll's·
M I   . u k r, . .   ii, ... cut . . everyone
I cry ad and *eny,.ady,, .· e rete,.*   eery li is
l ,rr·eny en.· l .· .l·· . · ·er . t cell ·,e, .·.l· i, ,n·. l by
Fabyan (ed. Ellis, p 251), *everither* is used by Pecock.
Eng. ed. Skeat, p ¶¶, l. 102)

Every-each is like *no one*, a pleonastic expression, which arose when the origin of *every* was forgotten.—(*See* Burton, *Anat of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 601).

168. **Either** (O.E. *æghwæther, ægther, â-hwæther, âwther;* E.E. *æither, aither, either, other, owther,* M.E. *ether, ayther, other, outher*), is an old comparative form (see § 148) containing the prefix â, *ever,* and the suffix, -ther. It signifies "any one of two." Its negative is **neither.**

Either has a possessive form **either's.**

> "Then *either's* love was *either's* life"
> > WARNER, *Albion's England,* p. 57

> "Eytheres will."—*Piers Plowman,* B xiii 348, p 228

169. **Other** (O.E. *â-ther* = one of two, second and other), contains the root ô = one, and the comparative suffix -ther. (*See* § 121, p. 99).

Other originally followed the strong declension of adjectives. Its plural was *othre,* when the final e became silent, a new plural *others* was formed.

Other for some time was used as a plural, both in M E and in the seventeenth century. Cp *other some* = *some others*

Another, any other, none other, some other, are forms that arose in the thirteenth century

Other the like = M E otherlike, occurs in Hooker, v 1 3.

170. **One another, each other,** are sometimes called reciprocal pronouns, but they are not compounds. They love *one another;* they love *each other* = they' love—*one* (loves) *another;* they love—*each* (loves) the *other.*

171. **Else** (O.E. *elles*), is the genitive case of an old pronominal root el = *ælher* (Cp. Lat. *alius*).

We find its pronominal character kept up in what else, O E. *elles hwæt.* Warner (*Albion's England,* p. 178) has *elswhat,* cp. aught else, nothing else.

Becon constantly uses *what other thing* for *what else.* So in Hooker, v. xx. 6

"For *what else* in the Law but the Gospel foreshewed?"

"*What other* the Gospel than the Law fulfilled?"

Other where = *elsewhere* in Hooker, v. xi. 12

Else is used substantively in the sense of *something else* in the following passage.

"What's that she mumbles? The devil's paternoster? Would
    it were *else*"—FORD, *Witch of Edmonton*, ii. 1.

172 Some demonstratives become indefinites Cp. *this* and
that, *such* and *such* ; he knew not *which* was *which* ; *ult* and *ult*
in the Ayenbite, p 54, *he* and *he* = one — another.—*Piers
Plowman*, B p 226, CHAUCER's *Knight's Tale*, ll 1756–1761.

"*This* would, I have, and *that*, and then I desire to be *such*
    and *such* "—(Burton, *Anat of Mel.* ed. 1845, p 185.

"*One* takes upon him temperance, holiness, *another* austerity,
    a thir i . . . .
    . . . .
    . . . .
    . . . . p, 34

"In with the polax preseth *he* and *he* ;
    By hynde the maste begynneth *he* to die."
            CHAUCER, ed Morris, v p 396.

"Then was I dubde as true precise,
    And faithful by and by ,
And some was compted haste enough
    Save *he* and *he* and I —DRANT's *Horace*.

See Palladius, *Husbandry*, p. 126, l 610, Burton, *Anat. of
Mel* ed 1845, p 8

173 Enough (O E *genōh*, E E. *inoh*, *inos*, M.E. *inough*,
ynough, *ynough*, *inow*, *enogh*)

We sometimes meet with the plural, *enow*, *onow*, (M.E.
inowe, *anow*).

174 The words sundry, divers, certain, and several, have
acquired more or less the force of indefinite pronouns.

"They had their *several* (= separate) partitions for heathen
    nations, their *several* for the people , their *several* for
    men, their *several* for women, their *several* for the
    priests, and for the high priest alone their *several*."—
    HOOKER, v xiv 1.

CHAPTER X.

THE VERB.

175 Verbs may be classified, according to their meaning, as **Transitive** and **Intransitive**

Transitive verbs express an action which does not terminate in the agent, but passes over to an object, as, "he *learns* his lesson." **Transitive** verbs are used **reflexively** ; as, "*he killed himself,*" "*sit down,*" and **reciprocally**, as "*they helped one another.*"

Intransitive verbs express an action that is confined to the agent, as, "corn *grows.*" Some intransitive verbs, by the addition of a preposition, become transitive , as, "the man *laughs at* the boy ," "he *talks of* himself." Sometimes verbs compounded with prepositions become transitive, cp. *come* and *overcome, speak* and *bespeak, go* and *forgo,* &c.

176 Some intransitive verbs have a causative form which is always transitive, as,

Intrans	Trans
fall	fell
sit	set
rise	raise

K

As we are not now able to form new causative verbs, we are often obliged to give a *causative meaning* to an intransitive verb, and it then takes an object; as, "*he flies his kite*," "*he ran the knife into his leg*" Intransitive verbs may take a noun of kindred meaning as object, as, "*he lived a good life*," "*he died a horrible death*."

177. Verbs used with the third person only are called Impersonal verbs, as "*me thinks*," "*it rains*," &c   These verbs were much more numerous in the older stages of the language. (See Syntax of Impersonal Verbs).

178 The verb affirms action, or existence of a subject under certain conditions or relations, called voice, mood, tense, number, person. In some languages the verbal root undergoes a change of form to express these various relations.

Voice.

179. Transitive verbs have two voices, the Active and the Passive. When a verb is used in the Active Voice, the subject of the verb represents the actor, or agent, as, "*the lion killed the elephant.*" A verb is said to be in the Passive Voice where the subject denotes the object to which the action is directed, as, "*the elephant was killed by the lion.*"

In English we have no inflexions for the passive voice, as in Latin and Greek, but express the same notion by means of the passive participle and the verb *to be.* We have a very good substitute for the

passive form in the use of an indefinite pronoun for the subject of the verb; as, "*somebody killed the boy*" = the boy was killed, "*one knows not how it happened*," = it is not known how it happened; "*they say*," = it is said. We can also express the passive voice by means of the verb *be*, and a verbal noun, as, "*the book is printing*" (= "*the book is a printing*") = "*the book is in printing*") = "*the book is being printed.*"

The passive voice has grown out of reflexive verbs. The *r* in *amo-r* is supposed to be a corruption of the pronoun *se* Cp Fr *s'appeler*, "to be called" *Of* the Teutonic languages only the Scandinavian dialects have formed a passive voice by means of the suffix *st* = *sk* = *sik* = *self*, Lat *se*, we have instances this in *busk*, "to prepare oneself," "to be ready," and *bask*

Mood.

180. **Mood** has reference to the manner or mode in which anything is predicated of the subject.

The **Indicative** mood makes a direct assertion, or asks some direct question about a fact, as, "*John has a book*," "*Has John a book ?*"

The **Subjunctive** mood expresses some condition or supposition, as "I may go, if the day be fine;" "Love not sleep, lest thou *come* to poverty," "*Had* I the book, I would give it to you," "Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in Him."

As the **Subjunctive** mood depends upon the construction of sentences, its peculiarities belong to Syntax. *The Subjunctive is almost gone out of use;* its place is supplied by auxiliary words.

K 2

The **Imperative** mood expresses a command,
entreaty, desire, request, &c; as, "*follow* me," "*grant*
our request"

In this mood we employ the verbal root without
any inflexion. It has only one person, the second
(singular and plural) In the oldest southern English
the plural took the termination -th

Some lar~ ~~~ ~~fl~~* *h~ ~~~~~~~~~~ ~~~~ *~~ *~~ ~~*ll
persons   \\ · ' ·'   '   '   '   '
persons in the use of let, "let me call," "let him
call." In old English *let* = cause.   Formerly the
S~*~ ~~~~~ ~~*~ *~~ ~~~~~ ~~ *~~ ~~~~~~~~ ~~ *~~*~~ ~~
\\ ' ' '' '' . .   ' ' *\\' . . ' ' .

> " But *fall* I first
> Amongst my sorrows, ere my treacherous hand,
> Touch holy things "
> > BEAUMONT AND FLEICHER, *The Maid s*
> > *Tragedy*, Act iii Sc i
> " \\' ' · ' '' ' '~   ' ~ · ' "
>   ' '   '   '
> '/   · ,·   ((I   .   '   I

The **Infinitive** mood is an abstract noun, and has
no inflexions for voice, mood, &c ; as, "*to see*," "*to
know* "   See p 164 for a fuller treatment of the Infini-
tive Mood

Participles are verbal adjectives, and always
refer to some noun in the sentence. Many adjectives
take a participial form in -ing, or -ed, or -en. See
§ 76, p. 59.

> " Thou is the *untamed* horse
> Dedst use the *conuuering* bit ,
> And here the *u x* *iuy'rd* oar,
> Ry *ucli'i* han la *denly phed*,

> Still leapeth through the sea,
> *Following* in wondrous guise,
> The fair Nereids with their hundred feet."
>
> PLUMPTRE'S *Œdipus at Colonus.*

A Verbal Noun in -ing (O.E -ung), often corresponds to a Latin gerund, as "he thanked him for *saving* his life" Here *saving* is not a participle, because "*for saving*" represents an older, "*for the saving of*"

> " Thonkyng him *for the saving of* his lif "
> *Gesta Rom* p 7
> " *In knowing* of the tid of day "
> CHAUCER, *Astrolabe,* p 19

"Concerning the means of *procuring* unity, men must beware that in the *procuring* or *munitng of* religious unity, they do not dissolve and deface the laws of charity and of human society "—BACON, *Essays,* 3

Here *procuring* = *the procuring of*

be

earlier periods these nouns in *-ing* were preceded by various prepositions—an, a, on, in, at, to

> " He sent Ancus his sones *an hontynge* "
> *Trevisa,* III 87
> " We han a wyndowe *a wirchyng* "
> *Piers Plowman,* B p. 34
> " He fel *on sleyynge* "
> *Genesides,* 201
> " While it was *in doynge* "
> *Trevisa,* III 97.
> " While it was *in workyng* "
> HARDYNG
> " *At a huntyng* he sleugh his father."
> *Ib*

"If she were going *to hanging*, no gallons should part us "
MASSINGER, *Virgin Martyr*, II 3.
"Hou hue Absolon *to hongynge* brouhte "
Piers Plowman, C p 64.

These verbal nouns may take an adjective or a demonstrative before them   They may also be used like an ordinary noun as the subject or object of a sentence.

Tense.

181. Verbs undergo a modification to indicate time. These forms are called **Tenses**. In the oldest period the verb was inflected for the present and perfect tenses only.

There was in O E. no distinct form for the future, its place being supplied by the present. Cp "he *goes* to town to-morrow." There were, however, traces of a past indefinite tense formed by the verb *was*, and the imperfect participle.   The perfect and past tenses were expressed by one form.

In the thirteenth century we find the modern future expressed by the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*.   In the fourteenth century we find (1) the present imperfect (continuous) formed by the verb *be*, and the present participle , (2) the perfect expressed by the auxiliary *have* and the passive participle ; as well as the emphatic form of the present and past tenses, with the auxiliary *do*.

The growth of new forms render a fuller classification of the tenses necessary. The three simple tenses, **Present, Past,** and **Future,** have four varieties, (1) **indefinite,** (2) **imperfect,** (3) **perfect,** (4) **perfect continuous.**

The fourth variety belongs only to the *Active Voice*

TABLE OF TENSES

Tense.	Indefinite.	Imperfect and Continuous.	Perfect.	Perfect and Continuous.
Present	I praise	I am praising	I have praised	I have been praising
Past	I praised	I was praising	I had praised	I had been praising
Future	I shall praise	I shall be praising	I shall have praised	I shall have been praising

For I praise and I praised we sometimes use I
do praise, I did praise, which are mostly em-
phatic. (See Do under the heading, Auxiliary
Verbs.) In the modern stage of the language verbs
undergo change of form only for the present and
past tenses.

Number.

182. Verbs are modified to express the number
and person of the subject   There are two num-
bers, Singular and Plural; and three persons
in each number, First, Second, and Third. In-
flexions for number have all disappeared, except in
the verb *to be*. The person-endings are preserved
only in the singular number of the present and past
tenses of the Indicative mood.

For the origin of the inflexions that mark person,
see Verbal Inflexions, § 200, p. 159.

Conjugation.

183. Verbs are classified, according to their mode
of expressing the past tense, into Strong and Weak
Verbs.

Strong Verbs form their past tense by change of
the root vowel; nothing is added to the root, as, fall,
fell, fallen. All passive participles of strong verbs
once ended in -en; but this ending has been dropped
in very many passive participles of this conjugation.

Weak Verbs form their past tense by adding to
the root of the present the letter -d, or -t. The vowel

e sometimes serves to unite the suffix -d to the root.
The passive participles of Weak Verbs end in -d, or -t.

Verbs that have vowel change in the past tense,
as well as the suffix -d, are not strong verbs. The
vowel change in told, bought, taught, has not the
same origin as that in strong verbs

The strong conjugation includes the oldest verbs in the lan-
guage Because this process of vowel change is no longer a
regular one, we call these verbs *irregular*

Very many strong verbs have disappeared from the language ·
many have gone over altogether to the weak conjugation , some
have become weak in the past tense, others in the passive
participle

A few have lost their past tense and have taken the passive
participle instead, as bit from bitten instead of boot (= he
did bite), while others again have lost their old past participle,
and have taken instead of it the past tense, as, *stood* for
standen

Strong Verbs.

ORIGIN OF VOWEL CHANGE IN THE PAST TENSE.

184 The oldest mode of forming the perfect tense
in the Indo-European languages was by reduplication
as, πέ-φευγα, &c , Lat *pe-pendi*, &c   We have only
one verb of this class in modern English, the verb
did. Cp. Lat. *dedi.*

In the oldest stages of the language, reduplicated

(as ... in Gothic haihait ...) is *héht* ... in ...
from hatan, *to call.* The Gothic *haihait*, shows
the reduplication more plainly than the O.E *héht.*
On comparing the Gothic verb *haihald* with the
O E. *heold,* and out *held,* we see that *vowel change* has

arisen out of an original reduplication; but we are
not able to trace all the past tenses of strong verbs to
an earlier reduplicated form. Those that can be so
traced form a class by themselves, which we shall call
the *First Division*, and the remainder, the *Second
Division*.

First Division.

185. The first division consists of two classes of
verbs, (1) those whose passive participles preserve the
vowel of the present; (2) those whose past participles
have vowel change.

186. DIVISION I—CLASS I

				O E.		
PRES.	PAST	PASS PART		PRES.	PAST	PASS PART
a, o, ea	e	a, o		ea, â, o	eo, e	ea, a
fall	fel¹	fallen		fealle	feoll	feallen
hang	hung	hung		hange	héng	hangen
hold	held	held, holden		healde	heold	healden
blow	blew	blown		bláwe	bleow	bláwen
know	knew	known		cnáwe	cneow	cnáwen
grow	grew	grown		grówe	greow	grówen
ti row	threw	thrown		thráwe	threow	thráwen
crow	crew	crown		cráwe	creow	cráwen
	[crowed¹]	[crowed]				
beat	beat	beaten		beáte	beot	beáten
gang	[went]	gone		gange	geong	gangen
now	[mowed]	[mowed]		máwe	meow	máwen
		mown				
sow	[sowed]	sown		sáwe	seow	sáwen
hew	[hewed]	[hewed]		heáwe	heow	heáwen
		hewn				

(1) The following verbs once belonged to this class: flow,
fold, low, leap, let, row, span, sleep, sweep, walk, well
weep.

(2) As early as the fourteenth century we find weak past tenses
of the verbs *know, blow, grow, leap, walk*.

(3) Fold. In the English Bible (*Nahum* x. 10) we find p. p.
folden. Cotgrave has *unfolden*.

---

¹ The words in brackets are the ordinary forms now in use.

(4) **Held,** is an instance of a passive participle being replaced by a past tense This arose through the dropping of *en* in *holden,* which left *hold* as the passive participle, in no wise differing in form in from the present tense. Cp *stood* for *stand* = *standen*

(5) **Hew** retained its strong past tense as late as the sixteenth century.

"And (he) *hew* it al to smal peces."—*St. Julians,* p 85
And the yere folowynge Kyng Wyllyam *hewe* downe moche of-the wood "—FABYAN, *Chronicle,* p 250

Hewn and mown are mostly used as adjectives, as, "*hewn* stones," "*mown* grass"

(6) **Hang** The old pretente was *heng* (See Chaucer, *Prol.* l. 160) The past hung seems to have arisen from the M E form of the past participle *hongen* (pronounced like the *o* in *some*)

> "Me þouȝte I saw a wyn-tre
> On þis tre, on vche a bowȝe
> *Henȝe* grapes þicke ynowȝe
> Of þo grapes þat þere *hong*
> In a coupe me þouȝte I wrong"
>
> *Cursor Mundi,* T. l. 4413

Hardyng (*Chronicle,* p 310) uses *hong* for hung (p 3) :—

"On Saint Andrewes day this wer drawe and hong "
"With ropes were thou bounde and on the gallowe *honge* "
FABYAN, *Chronicle,* p 430.

(7) **Sew** = *sewed.*
"An husband that *sew* god sed apon his land."—*Met. Hom.* p. 145.

(8) **Welk** = *walked*
"A man *welk* thoru a wod his wai "—*Cursor Mundi, Edinburgh MS*
"And than we *welk* forth "—*Paston Letters,* ed Gairdner, vol. i. p. III.

(9) **Leep (lep)** = *leaped*
'For which his hors for feere gan to turne,
And *lep* asyde, and foundred as he *leep.*"
CHAUCER, *Knightes Tale,* l. 1828

(10) **Flowed**   The O E *flew* became in E E. *fleaw, fleau ;*
in M E *flew* is used as the past of *fly* or *flee*
" The flood that *overflew* al the world."—CARGRAVE, p. 17.

(11) **Slep** = *slepped*
"Thre daies *slep* he al on-on "—*O E Misc* p 24.

(12) **Wep** = *weeped*
"Swiche teares *wep* ure drihten "—*O E Hom. II* p 145.

187 DIVISION I.—CLASS II

PRES.	PAST	PASS PART	O.E PRES	PAST	PASS PART
i	a, u, ou	u, ou	on-gimne[1]	a	u
begin	began	begun	on-gana	con-gana	on-gunnen
ring	clang	clung	clinge	clang	clungen
climb	clomb [climbed]	[climbed]	clïmbe	clamb	clum'ben
drink	drank	drunk	drince	dranc	druncen
run	ran	run	rinne, yrne	ran, arn	runnen
swim	swam	swum	swimme	swamm	swummen
spin	span [spun]	spun	spinne	spann	spunnen
sing	sang	sung	singe	sang	sungen
shrink	shrank	shrunk	since	sanc	suncen
sink	sank	sunk	scrince	scranc	scruncen
fling	flang [flung]	flung	—	—	—
sling	slang [slung]	slung	—	—	—
ring	rang	rung	hringe	hrang	hrungen
slink	slunk	slunk	—	—	—
spring	sprang	sprung	springe	sprang	springen
sting	stang [stung]	stung	stinge	stang	stungen
swing	swang [swung]	swung	swinge	swang	swungen
wring	wrang [wrung]	wrung	wringe	wrang	wrungen
win	wan [won]	won	—	—	—
band	bound [bound]	bounden [bound]	binde	band	bunden
find	found	found	findĕ	fand	fuðden
fight	fought	fought	—	—	—
grind	ground	ground	grinde	grand	grinden
wind	wound	wound	—	—	—
e	o	o ᵖ	e	ea	o
help	holp [helped]	holpen [helped]	helpe	healp	holpen
melt	molt [melted]	molten [melted]	melte	mealt	molten
swell	swell [swelled]	swollen [swelled]	swelle	sweal	swol'gen
burst	burst	bur-t	berste	bearst	bo-sten

[1] All these verbs had a plural form in **u** —*clunҫon*, &c = we clung

(1) To this class once belonged bellow, burn, ding, delve, carve, milk, mourn, starve, swallow, stint, spurn, thrash, wink, yield

. Bu. fe , ... ten, shrunken, sunken, are . o . . l, ...

(3) The forms in u (*spun*, *clung*) have arisen from the passive participle.

(4) The ou in *bound*, &c stands for an older o or a. This ou is probably-due to the u in the past participle which in M.E. became ou ; thus the O.E. *funden* = M.E. *founden*. Cp O E. *cu*, *hu* = M E *cou*, *hou* = Eng *cow*, *how*

(5) **Clomb** = *climbed*

"So *clomb* this first grand thief into God's fold "
MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, iv 192

"Wa f . . . r, ... ""
.   . . . ,

(6) **Swal** = *swelled*

"And [he] *swalle* and become grete "
LA TOUR LANDRY, p 37.

"Hir thought it *swal* so sore about hir hert "
CHAUCER, *C T* 1 6549

(7) **Dalf** = *delved*

"When Adam *dalve* and Eve span,
Who was then the gentleman ?"
PILKINGTON, p 125 ; see *Piers Plowman*, B vi 193

"Whenne thei be *dolven* in her den "
Babees Book, p 52

(8) **Halp** = *helped*.

"This good lady she *halpe* '
LA TOUR LANDRY, p 136.

"Those that be in hell cannot be *holpen* by it [prayer]."—
GRINDAL, *R* p 34

(9) **Yald** = *yielded*

"He *yalde* ayen the sight unto this good man."—LA TOUR
LANDRY, p. 102.

"He *yald* hym creaunt to Crist."

Piers Plowman, ed Wright, 1 7810, B. xii. 193.

Surrey has the old past participle *yolden;* Fabyan has *yolded.*

(10) **Foughten** = *fought* (p p.)

"Thus yere was the felde of Dykysmew *foughten.*"—FABYAN,
p 683.

"On the *foughten* field."

MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, vi. 410.

(11) **Malt** = *melted.*

"And the metalle be the hete of the fire *malt* "

CAPGRAVE, p. 9.

(12) **Dang** = *dinged*

"That thai suld tak kobille stanes,
And *dang* his teth out all at anes ;
And when thai with the stanes him *dang*,
He stode as laghand thaim omang "

MS Harl. 4196, fol 170.

(13) **Carf** = *carved.*

"And *carf* byforn his fader at the table "

CHAUCER, *Prol* 1 100

"Tho was he *corven* out of his harneys "

The Knightes Tale, l. 1838.

(14) **Starf** = *starved, died.*

" — Kyng Capaneus
That *starf* at Thebes."

Ib 1 935.

(15) **Wonk** = *winked*

"He *wonk*, and gan about hyme to behold "

Lancel of the Lask, l. 1058.

(16) **Burst** (past) has come in through the old p p. *bursten*
or *bursten.* The true past is brast or bi_gast._

"And ute as a brok it *brast* he st_nd._"

*Cur_r Mundi_*, l 6392.

188. Second Division.

DIVISION II.—CLASS I

			O E.		
PRES.	PAST	PASS PART	PRES.	PAST	PASS PART
ea	o (a)	o	e	æ	o
(1) break	bore, bare* broke, brake*	born broken	bere	bær	boren
shear	[sheared]	shorn [sheared]	scere	scær	scoren
speak	spoke, spake*	spoken	sprece	spræc	sprecen
steal	stole	stolen	s cle	stæl	stolen
tear	tore, tare*	torn	tere	tær	toren
(a) come	came	come	cume	com	cumen

(1) The old verbs nim (take), quell once belonged to this class.

(2) The O E æ became in M E a (cp the archaic forms bare, spake, brake), and o

(3) The n of the p p in M.E was often dropped in all dialects except the Northern. We find in such instances of these curtailed forms, as, broke, spoke, stole, for *broken, spoken, stolen*

(4) Shear The old past tense was share or shore

"First he *shar* a-two here throtes."—HAVELOK, l. 1413.

189. DIVISION II —CLASS II.

			O E		
PRES	PAST	PASS PART	PRES	PAST	PASS PART
i	a	1	1, e	æ, (ea)	e
(1) give	bade, bid	bidden,*bid	bidde	bæd	beden
he	gave	given	gife	geaf	gifen
sit	lay sat	lien,* lain sat	licge sitte	læg sæt	legen seten
ea, (ee), e	a, (o)	ea, (ee,) o	ete	æt	eten
(a) eat	ate	eaten	-gite	-geat	-geten
get	gat, got	gotten,* got	trede	træd	treden
tread	trod	trodden, trod			
see	saw	seen	seoh, scohe	seah	ge-adn
weave	wove	woven	wefe	wæf	wefen
—	quoth	—	cwethe	cwæth	cweden
—	was	—	[wese]	wæs	wesen

Words marked thus * are archaic

(1) **Quoth** is now used as a present tense. The root of the present is seen in *bequeathe*, the old preterite of which was *bequath* —

"[He] *bequath* his serke to his love."

Gest Rom 23

(2) **Fret, knead, wreak,** and **mete** (measure), once belonged

. . . . In

. . . .

(4) The past tenses of wreak in M.E. were *wrek* and *wrak*, p p *ywroken* Spenser uses the p p *wroken* Surrey has *un-wroken* = *unrevenged*

(5) The o in trod, got, quoth, arises out of M E a = O E = æ.

(6) Scott (*Waverley*, xi) has **eat** = *ate* Shakespeare (*King John* l. 1), has eat = *aitm*, O.E. æ becomes M E. e(ee), as well as a, hence M.E. eet = eat = ate

"Butter and bred that *æt* al-sua "

C Mundi, G , l. 2715.

"Butter and breed ther *eet* also "—*Ib.* T.

190 DIVISION II —CLASS III.

Pres	Past	Pass Part	Pres	Past	Pass Part
a	o, oo, e	a (o)	a	o	a
awake	awoke	awoke	waæe	wôc	wacen
forsake	forsook	forsaken			
lade	[laded]	laden[laded]	hlade	hlôd	hladen
grave,	[graved]	[graved]	grafe	grôf	grafen
engrave		graven			
stand	stood	stood	stande	stôd	standen
shave	[shaved]	shaven	scaf	scôf	scafen
		[shaved]			
shake	shook	shaken	scace	scôc	scacen
swear	swore	sworn	swenge	swôr	sworen
take	took	taken	tace	tôc	tacen
draw	drew	drawn	drage	drôh	dragen
slay	slew	slain	sleahhe	slôh	sleahhen

shook = shaken (*Paradise Lost*, VI , 219), **stood** has taken the place of the p p **standen**, or **stonden**

(3) **Sware** for **swore** occurs in *Mark*, VI , 23   The a is not original, but probably arose through the M E *swor* = *swer*, which caused it to be clashed with *spake*, *bare*, &c. Cp 1 1618 in *Cursor Mundi*, where "he *swar* his ath" in Cotton MS (Northern dialect) = "he *swor* an ooth" in Trin. MS (Midland dialect)

(4) Bake.   The old p p **baken** occurs in *Levit* h 4
> " myn hungir *book* this blisful breed "
> POL *Rel Love Poems*, p 191.
> " —benes and bren *ybaken* togideres "
> *Piers Plowman*, VI B 184, p 102.

(5) **Gnaw** was once conjugated like draw, slay   In M E we find *gnow* and *gnew* ; *gnew* was used late in the sixteenth century   The p p *be-gnawn* occurs in the *Taming of the Shrew*, III 2.
> " þat best *gnow* up al bidene "—*Cursor Mundi*, G 1 6043
> " So depe hit [rasours] *wode* and *gnowe.*"—*St Juliana*, p 85.

(6) Heave.   For heaved we sometimes find hove and heft
The O E pret was *hôf* E E *hef*, *heof*, *hef*, M E *hef*, *hove*
> " She *hef* hir heued heyer "—CHAUCER, l. 5141.
> " Ure Iafdi   this dai was *hoven* into heuene."—*O E. Hom.*
> II p 167.

(7) **Shape.**   The old past tense shope, was in use in the sixteenth century.
> " I *shoop* me into shroudes "
> *Piers Plowman*, B. Prol 2.
> " But at the last god *shope* a remedy "
> HICKSCORNER, p 163, ed 1874.

The p p. occurs in mis-*shapen*, ill-*shapen*   See *Pt* h 5

(8) **Grave.**   We have the old p p. as an adjective in "a *graven* image."

L

The verb *to grave* once signified *to bury*.

> "In Ebron hir *grof* Abraham,
> Thar first was *graven* hali Adam "
>   C. *Mundi*, G 1. 3213.

(9) Lade   We find as passive participle **loden, loaden,**
well as laden.

(10) Wash   The old p p   was retained very late in un-
washen

> " Hir body *wesusch* with water "
>   CHAUCER, *Knightes Tale*, 1 1425.

(11) Wax to grow   Spenser has *wox* past, and *woxen* p p,
waxen = *grown*, occurs in Gen xix 13, *Lev* xxv 39

> " þai stod þan still and *wex* no more "
>   *Cursor Mundi*, 1. 1420.

191 DIVISION II—CLASS IV.

Pres	Past	Pass Part	Pres	Past	Pass Part
i (long)	o	i (short)	í	á	1
a-bide	abode	abode, abiden*	bíde	bád	biden
bite	bit	bitten	bíte	bát	biten
drive	drove	driven	dríffe	dráf	drifen
chide	chode,*	chidden,	cíde	cíd	cíden
	chid	chid			
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid	ríde	rád	riden
rise	rose	risen	ríse	rás	risen
rive	rove [rived]	riven [rived]			
shine	shone	shone	scíne	scán	scinen
shrive	shrove	shriven	scrífe	scráf	gescrifen
slide	slid	slidden, slid	slíde	slíd	sliden
smite	smote, smit*	smitten	smíte	smát	smiten
stride	strode	stridden	stríðe	stráð	striðen
thrive	throve,	thriven,	—	—	—
	thrived	throve*			
write	wrote, writ*	written,	wríte	wrát	writen
		writ*			
strike	struck	struck,	stríce	stríc	stricen
		stricken			
strive	strove	striven	—	—	—

Obsolete.

(1) To this class once belonged *grpe, flite* (strive), *glide, reap, slit, spew, sigh, wreathe.*

(2) The **o** in this class of verbs stands for an older **a**, which occurs in the archaic forms *drave* (*Josh.* xvi 10, Spenser, *F Q* VI vii 12), *strake* (*Acts,* xxvii 17), *strave* (Surrey)

(3) But (cp the old past tenses *rid, slid, writ, smit*), is borrowed from the pass participle. The true form is *bot,* or *boot*

 "The serpent *boot* the grehounde grevously "
                                        Gest Rom 87

(4) Shone, abode, struck (p p) show how the past tense has replaced the older passive participle

             " Till the sunne haveth *smen* "
             = Till the sun hath shone
                                      O E Miscell p 1
           "Yf he had *abyden* at home "
                                 LA TOUR LANDRY, p 170
           " Well *strucken* in years "
                                  Luke 1 7 , see *Ps* l111 4.

Shakespeare has,
                 " *Struck* in years "—*Rich III* 1 1 1

(5) Wreathen sometimes occurs as the p p of *wreathe,* or *wrthe*

              " *Wreathen* hair "
                         LATIMER, see *Exodus,* xxviii 14, 22,
                                   24, 25

The M E past of *wreathe* was *wrooth* or *wroth.* In the sixteenth century we find *wrthe* used as a past tense

              " He *wrythe* her necke in sonder "
     STUBS, *The Anatomie of Abuses,* p 67, ed. 1585

(6)   " I"   *   '   * ' ' *   '   *   '
                              l'   * ,   ' 1^.

(7)   '   '   * '

(8) * l:•   _   :   *   *   * ' *r*   (;'
                              Will of Palerne, l 792

(9)   " The vapour, which that of the erthe *glod* [glided] "
                                  CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 10707.

(10)   " And Jacob *chode* with Laban "
                                        Gen xxxi 36
                                              L 2

DIVISION II.—CLASS V.

Pres	Past	Pass. Part	Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
ee, oo	o	o	eo	ea	o
freose	froze	frozen	freose	freds	froren
seethe	sod*	sodden, sod*	seothe	seåth	soden
	[seethed]	[seethed]			
cleave	clove [cleft]	cloven[cleft]	cleofe	cleif	clofen
choose	chose	chosen	ceose	ceås	coren
lose	[lost]	[lost] lorn,*	leose	leås	loren
		forlorn			
c aboot	shot	shot,	sceote	sceåt	scoten
		shotten.*			
fly	flew	flown	fleoge,fleohe	fleåh	flogen

(1) Many weak verbs once belonged to this class, as, brook, bow, brew, chew, creep, crowd, dive, flee, fleet (float), lie lose, lock, greet, knot, reek, rue, shove, smoke, snow, suck, slip, tug

(2) Clave occurs in the Bible for clove (*Gen* xx 3)

Cloven has now only an adjectival force, as in "*cloven foot.*"

> " It [sea] *clef* [*claue* C] and gaf him reдi gate "
>
>   *Cursor Mundi*, G I 6262

Cleave, "to cling to," is a weak verb, yet clave is found in *Ruth,* 1. 14, as its past tense

(3) Lorn = *losen,* and forlorn = *forlosen,* are archaic forms. In the O E p p the s has passed into an r (cp *was* and *were,* &c)

> "———After he had far Una *lorn.*"
>
>   SPENSER, *F Q.* 1 42.

> " Thritti yeir es siþen gan
>
> þat 1 mi sun haд *losen* dere "—*Cursor Mundi,* C. l. 5363.

(4) Froren = *frozen*

> "My heart blood is well nigh *froren* (frozen) I feel."
>
>   *Ib Shep. Cal,* Feb.

> "———The parching air
>
> Burns *frore* (= frozen) and cold performs th' effect of fire."
>
>   MILTON, *Par Lost.*

" A *froren* mur [wall] "—*O E. Miscell* p 151.

(5) Chosen has supplanted the old p p coren

> " For hir childe thenne sho him *chees.*"
>
>   *Cursor Mundi,* T. l. 5643.

"He is to-fore alle othre *i-coren*."

<div align="right">

O E Misc p 98
</div>

(6) Seethe   In the Bible (*Gen* xxv 29), sod = *boiled* occurs as the past tense

"Wortes or other herbes . .
The whiche sche schredde and *seeth* for hir lyvynge"

<div align="right">

CHAUCER, *The Clerkes Tale*, l. 227.
</div>

"Some (fissch) thei solde and some thei *sothe*"

<div align="right">

Piers Plowman, B xv 288
</div>

"*Ysothe* or ybake"—*Ib* p 278

<div align="right">

The Four Elements, p 35, ed 1874.
</div>

"I force not whether it be *sodden* or roast"

"Of all manner of dishes both *sod* and roast "—*Ib.* p 25

(7) "Hit *snew* [snowed] fro hem as hit were floure "

<div align="right">

Cursor Mundi, T l 6381
</div>

192. Some verbs that have now strong past tense or passive participle, were once weak [1]

Pres	Past	Pass. Part.
betide	betid*	[betid]
dig	dug	dug
diæ	digged*	digged*
hide	hid	hidden, [hid]
rot	[rotted]	rotten
show	[showed]	shown
	[shewed]	[shewed, showed]
stick	stuck	stuck
	stack*	—
strew	[strewed]	strown
spit	spit,* spat	spat, spitten*
saw	[sawed]	sawn
wear	wore	worn
	ware*	

The past tenses *betid, hid, spit, spat,* are only apparently *strong*. The M E. forms *betid-de, hid-de, spit-te, spat-te,* (cp *sweat-te*, sweated) were weak.

<div align="right">

[1] Forms marked thus * are *archaic*.   Forms in brackets are *weak*.
</div>

193 ALPHABETICAL LIST OF STRONG VERBS [1]

Pres	Past	Pass Part
abide	abode	abode
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoke
	awaked *	*awaked*
bake	—	baken
	baked	*baked*
*bear (bring forth)	bore, bare*	born
bear (carry)	bore, bare*	borne
beat	beat	beaten
begin	began	begun
behold	beheld	beholden, beheld
bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
bind	bound	bounden,* bound
bite	bit	bitten, bit
blow	blew	blown
break	broke, brake*	broken
burst	burst	burst, bursten*
chide	chode,* chid	chidden, chid
choose	chose, chase*	chosen
cleave (split)	clove	cloven
	clave*	
	cleft	*cleft*
cling	clung	clung
climb	clomb	—
	climbed	*climbed*
cling	clang	clung
come	came	come
crow	crew	crown
	crowed	*crowed*
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk, drunken
drive	drove, drave*	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen

<hr>

[1] The forms in italics are *weak.* Those marked * thus are *archaic.*

Pres	Past	Pass. Part
fight	fought	foughten*, fought
find	found	found
fling	flung, flang*	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forget	forgot	forgotten
	forgat*	forgot*
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen
		frorn, frore⁻
get	got, gat*	got, gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grave	graved	graven
en-grave	engraved	en-graven¹
	engraved	engraved
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
	hanged	hanged
heave	hove	—
	heaved	heaved
help	—	holpen
	helped	helped
hew	—	hewn
	hewed	hewed
hold	held	held, holden
know	knew	known
lade	—	laden, loaden
	laded	laded
lie	lay	lain, lien*
lose	—	lorn, forlorn
	lost	lost
melt	—	molten
	melted	melted
mow	—	mown
	mowed	mowed
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid*
ring	rang, rang*	rung

Pres.	Past	Pass Part.
rise	rose	risen
rive	—	riven
	rived	*rived*
run	ran	run
see	saw	seen
seethe	sod	sodden, sod*
	seethed	*seethed*
shake	shook	shaken
shave	*shaved*	shaven, *shaved*
shear	*sheared*, shore*	shorn, *sheared*
shine	shone	shone
	shined	*shined*
shoot	shot	shot, shotten*
shrink	shrank	shrunk
	shrunk*'	shrunken
sing	sang, sung*	sung
sink	sank	sunk, sunken
sit	sat	sat, sitten*
slay	slew	slain
slide	slid	slid, slidden
sling	slung, slang*	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
smite	smote, smit*	smitten, smit*
sow	—	sown
	sowed	*sowed*
speak	spoke, spake*	spoken
spin	spun, span*	spun
spring	sprung, sprang*	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole, stale*	stolen
sting	stung, stang*	stung
stink	stank	stunk
stride	strode, strid*	stridden
strike	struck	struck
		stricken
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
	sware*	
swell	*swelled*	swollen, *swelled*

Pres.	Past	Pass Part.
swim	swam, swum*	swam ·
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
tear	tore, tare*	torn
thrive	throve	thriven·
	thrived	*thrived*
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden, trod
wake	woke	—
	waked	*waked*
weave	wove	woven
win	won, wan*	won
wind	wound	wound
wring	wrung, wrang*̣	wrung
write	wrote, writ*	written

Weak Verbs

194. The strong conjugation comprehends all primitive verbs, to the weak belong all derivative and borrowed verbs.

The weak conjugation is sometimes called the regular conjugation, because the formation of the past tense of weak verbs by means of the suffix d, is the ordinary method now in use The method of forming the past tense by reduplication and by vowel change, is quite obsolete. Children and uneducated persons often make the strong verbs conform to the weak conjugation, and say *seed* for *saw*, &c We have done exactly the same with regard to many old verbs, as, *showed* for *shof*, *brewed* for *brew*, &c.

195 Weak Verbs form their past tense by means of the suffix -d or -t.

In old English we find that this ending had a longer form -de, as, Ic ner-e-de *I saved*. This -de represents a more primitive dede = did, which is the past tense, (formed by reduplication) of the verb do.

I loved = I love-did; thou lovedest = thou love-didst, &c.

196   The suffix -d is united to the root by the connecting vowel -e, as, lov-e-d, command-e-d.

(1) The connecting vowel, though preserved in writing, is dropped in pronunciation, except when the verbal root ends in a dental. Thus; we **loved, praised, thanked,** are pronounced **lovd, praizd, thankt;** but in **commanded,** and **lifted,** the -ed has, necessarily, its full pronunciation.

The verbs of this class in O E had the radical vowel *short*

For the reason of the change of d to t, see § p. 63, 45.

197. The passive participles also end in d or t. This suffix has not the same origin as the d of the past tense.

198   The following verbs have no connecting vowel, and are sometimes called *contracted* verbs :—

(2) *a* Before the addition of the suffix -d, the radical vowel is shortened

Pres	Past	Pass Part
hear	heard	heard
shoe	shod	shod
flee	fled	fled

b If the root ends in **d,** the suffix -d is dropped, and the radical vowel is shortened

feed	fed	fed
lead	led	led
read	red	red

In the O E the past tenses of *a* and *b* were the same · cp O E.

	Inf	Past	Pass Part
a.	hȳr-an (hear)	hȳr-de	hȳr-ed
	fēd -an (feed)	fēd-de	fēd-ed
b	lǣd-an (lead)	lǣd-de	lǣd-ed

Flee was originally strong, see p 140 , *fleeh, met, met* has conformed to *lead,* &c Cp O E. *mētan, mēt-te, mēt-ed.*

In E E we find the shortened p p *fed, led,* &c The loss of
the final e of the past te.ise, in the fifteenth century, reduced the
past tense and the p p to the same form thus, *ledde* became
leid, or *led.*

In some few verbs ending in a liquid, or combination of
liquids, t has replaced the older d.

	Inf	Past	Pass Part
	feel	felt	felt
	deal	dealt	dealt
	smell	smelt	smelt
	mean	meant	meant
	dream	dreamt	dreamt
	burn	burnt	burnt
Cp O E.	dǽl-an	dǽl-de	gedǽl-ed
	bærn-an	bærn-dĕ	bærn-ed

(3) The suffix -d (-t) is often dropped after **d, t, st,
rt, ft,** and the present, past, and passive participle, are
identical in form

	Inf	Past	Pass Part
	rid	rid	rid
	shred	shred	shred
	set	set	set
	shut	shut	shut
	cut	cut	cut
	put	put	put
	hurt	hurt	hurt
	lift	lift[1]	lift
	thrust	thrust	thrust
	cast	cast	cast

In O E *rid* and *set* were

	Inf	Past	Pass Part.
	á-hreddan	áhred-de	á-hredd-ed
	sett-an	set-te	sett-ed, set

Shut, put, shred, spread, were perhaps similarly conjugated.
Ca·' *. . .* . . . . a form distinct from

---

[1] In the English Bible

the pass. participle, as, *rudde, shredde, sette cutte,* &c. We have now longer forms for some of the M E. shorter ones; cp. *reste* = *rested; wette* = *wetted,* &c. O E. *scyl-de* = *shielded; stylte* = *stilted.*

(4) The suffix -t replaces **d** after **p, f, s, ch, v.** The radical vowel, if long, is shortened.

Inf	Past	Pass Part.
creep	crept	crept
weep	wept	wept
kiss	kist	kist
lose	lost	lost
pitch	pight	pight*
leave	left	left
cleave	cleft	cleft

The **v** in *leave, cleave, bereave,* was originally f In M E. *crept, wept* in the past tense were *crepte, wepte* . and also *crep, wep,* (strong forms)

(5) Verbs ending in **ld, nd, rd,** changed the **d** of the root into **t,** and the tense suffix is dropped

build	built	built
gild	guilded, gilt	gilt
bend	bent	bent
send	sent	sent
gird	girt	girt

The **t** in the past tense of *built,* &c , stands for an original **d + de,** which became de, then te, and, lastly, t This last change took place in the fourteenth cent —

in l   t   ,   w   ,   w   p w   f   ,t   ,   ,   ,   m   ,t ,
A ,   d as   u   , ,   ,   ,   ,   ,
the uncontracted, with slightly different meanings, as, *gilt* and *gilded,* *bent* and *bended,* *blent* and *blended.*

In O E. we find only the long forms of the p p , as, *gyrd-ed, send-ed,* &c

(6) Some few verbs have vowel-change with the addition of **d** or **t** in the past tense.

Archaic.

(a)	tell	told	told
	sell	sold	sold
(b)	seek	sought	sought
	teach	taught	taught

The change of vowel in these verbs is not the same as that in the strong verbs   It is the present that has changed   The root of tell is tal, which we preserve in tale, and tal-k   Cp sell and sale   Between the root and the infinitive suffix there was once an ı, which turned the a to e ; thus, root *tal*, whence *tali-en*, modified to *teli-en* or *tell-en*   Cp *man, men.* The o in told, sold, represents the older a of *tale, talk*, which was never modified by the lost suffix -ı

The t ın sought, &c , ıs due to the *sharp k* or *c* in seek. Under the influence of t, the guttural has become *h,* or *gh*

In the seventeenth century we find rought, raught, straught, the past tenses of *reck, reach, stretch*

In M E we had roughte = recked ; raughte = reached ; straughte = stretched ; laughte = latched, seized.

The verbs of this class were in O E. contracted ın past tense and pass part

199. The following weak verbs have some pecu-liarities that need explanation.

Catch, caught, caught.   This verb of Norman-French origin has followed the past tense &c. of E.E. *lacchen*, to catch, take , *lahte* (past).

Analogous to *caught* we find fraught, as well as freighted ; and distraught for distracted , also *raught = reached* in Shakespeare, *Love's Labour Lost,* IV 2, 41 , *raught* also = *reft.* Cp 2 *Hen VI* II 3, 43

"I *raught* his head from his body "
•*Pierce Penilesse,* p. 82.

Clothe, clad, clad.   In O.E. we find *clāthian,* (inf) *clāthode* (past), *clāthod* (p p), = M.E. *clothe (clöthe),* clothede *(clethede, cledde),* cled, *clad.*

In M.E we find *ledde, ladde, = led,* which has pro-bably led to *clad* through *cled = cledde = clethede.*

Make, made, made. Made lost its radical *k* as early as the thirteenth century. In the Northern dialects we find in the Northern dialects *ma* (inf) and *mas* = *makes*. Cp M E *ta* = *to take, tas* = *takes, tan* = *taken.*

Have. had. had: O Γ *ɪ·ʰ·ɪ·* *ɪ·-ʄ·ɪ·* *ʌ·-ɟ·ɪ·,* Γ Γ *ʌ·ʻ ɪʻ,ɪɪʻ ʻ ɪʻ ,ʻʻʻ ʌ,ɪ . . ʻ ɪʻ ɪ ʻʻ ɪʻ,*

There was also a short form *ha, to have,* from which comes *has* = *haves.* In the M E Northern dialect we find *has.* See Bruce, XIII 642, (ed. Skeat)

Say, said, said; O E *secgan, sægde, sægd.*

Lay, laid, laid; O E *lecgan, legde, legd.*

In **say, lay** (M E *sẹye,, leye*), the **y** represents the older cg (g)

Buy, bought, bought; O E *bycgan, bohte, boht* In M E *buggen, bugge* = *to buy,* and here the **y** represents an older *g* which makes its appearance in the past tense Cp *slay* and *slaughter.*

Think, thought, thought; O.E *thencan, thóhte, thóht.*

The **n** is not radical, cp. *gange* and *go,* *stand* and *stood*

(Me)thinks, (me)thought, (me)thought; O.E. *thyncth, thuhte, thúht*

Work, wrought, wrought; O E *wyrcan, worhte, worht.*

Wrought, as a past tense, is almost superseded by the more modern form, **worked.**

Went was originally the past tense of **wend.** O E. *wendan, to turn, go* It replaced the O.E *eo-de,* M E *sede, sode, yode* (past tense of the root I *to go*)

Go (old form **gang**) was originally a strong verb, as is seen by its p p **gone.**

Ago = **agone** is the p.p. of the O E. verb *agan,,*

to go by, elapse, It is now used adverbially, as "a
long time *ago.*"

> " By Saint Mary, and I wist that, I would be *ago* "
>
> HICKSCORNER, p 167, ed 1874.

> " Who, think you, brought here this figure?
> Certes, Lord Nature,
> Himself not long *agone* "
>
> *The Four Elements,* p 28, ed 1874.

Do, did, done, is a reduplicated verb, and of
course belongs to the strong conjugation of verbs

The Sanskrit *dhâ* to place is cognate with English *do,* and its
perfect *dadhau* is formed by reduplication, like English *did.*

Verbal Inflexions.

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

200 Verbs are of two kinds, primary and derivative.
All the strong verbs are of primary origin ; the weak
verbs are of secondary formation. To *bear* is a pri-
mary verb, because it is formed directly from the root,
bar ; but *tell,* as we have seen (p. 157), is formed
from the nominal theme, *tale,* and is therefore a de-
rivative verb.

The root is the significant element in the verb, to
which are added endings to mark **person, tense,** or
mood.

Sometimes the personal terminations are added
directly to the verbal root, as in **do-st, do-th,**
or by means of a connecting vowel, as in **lov-e-st,
lov-e-th.**

· The person-endings were originally pronominal
roots placed *after,* and compounded with, the verbal

root or theme, as if we were to say love-I, love-thou, love-he, &c

201. The suffix of the **first person** singular, was originally m (for *mi*), which we still retain in the verb, a-m.

Cp. Lat su-m, Gr εἰ-μι, Sansk as-mi = *I am*, Ger. bin, O H G *pim*, O E (Northern) *beom, I be*

202 The suffix of the **second person** singular is -st; it was originally -t, which can be traced back to a suffix -ti, identical in origin with the root of thou In the subjunctive mood this suffix is altogether lost.

The original t occurs in shal-t, wil-t, ar-t

... ... OΓ ... t 't . .. e .m . . . 1 .
... ; . .. ... r . ... d r ... .e' l . .d, ...
I . 'st . . 'r . .. .. .e .. er n r e . . . . t,
i.. I . .. . r ...
century.

203. The suffix of the **third person** is -th (the root of the, tha-t) = *he, that*. As early as the eleventh century, in the Northern dialects, th was softened to s; but the former is now archaic

In the past tense of strong and weak verbs, the endings in the first and third persons singular have altogether disappeared

204 In modern English we have no plural suffixes.

In O.E the indicative present plural of all persons ended in -th (originally the ending of the second person plural), as (1) ber-a-th; (2) ber-a-th; (3) ber-a-th.

The past indicative and the subjunctive (present and past) ended all their persons in -n (the original suffix of the third person plural); as, subjunctive present find-e-n; indicative past, fund-o-n, and subjunctive past, fund-e-n, *or* fund-o-n.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find the Southern dialect keeping -th for the present plural indicative, the Midland -n, and the Northern dropping all endings, or taking -s in the second and third persons. (See § 49, p. 31.)

In O E. the personal endings were often dropped when the pronoun followed the verbs, as gá ge = gath ge (go ye) ; ete we = eten we (eat we, let us eat)

The plural in -en was in use up to the middle of the sixteenth century, and a few examples are to be found in Spenser and Shakespeare, Hall, (contemporary with Milton) uses it in his Satires, e g.

" And angry bullets *whistlen* at his ear "

vi 46

In O.E the imperative plural ended in -th, as *nim-ath, take ye.* In M.E this ending was kept up in the Midland and Southern dialects, but not in the Northern dialect, where -s was used instead of it

205. Old English Conjugation of Verbs.

STRONG VERBS.

Active Voice

Nim-an, to take

Pres Inf	Past	Pass Part
nim-an	nam	num-en

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present (and Future) Tense.

Sing	Plur.
I. ic nim-e	we nim-ath
2. thú nim-est	ge nim-ath
3. he nim-eth	hi nim-ath

M

Past Tense

1. ic nam	we nam-on
2. thû nâm-e	ge nam-on
3. he nam	hi nam-on

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense

1 ic nim-e	we nim-en
2. thû nim-e	ge nim-en
3. he nim-e	hi nim-en

Past Tense

1. ic nâm-e	we nâm-en[2]
2. thû nâm-e	ge nâm-en
3. he nâm-e	hi nâm-en

IMPERATIVE MOOD

nim		nim-ath

Simple Inf	Pres. Part.
num-an	nim-ende

Dative Inf	Pass. Part.
num-anne	num-en

WEAK VERBS.

Active Voice.

Infin.	Preterite	Pas. Part
ner-i-an (*save*)	ner-e-de	ner-e-d
luf-i-an (*love*)	luf-o-de	luf-o-d
hŷr-an (*hear*)	hŷr-de	hŷr-e-d

---

[2] The oldest form of the past subjunctive plural ending was *-en*, which afterwards became *-on*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present (and Future) Tense.

Sing		Plur
1 nerı-e, lufig-e, hýr-e		1 nen-ath, lufi-ath, hýr-ath
2 nen-est, luf-ast, hýr-est		2 nen-ath, lufi-ath, hýr-ath
3 ner-eth, luf-ath, hýr-eth		3 nen-ath, lufi-ath, hýr-ath

Past Tense

1 ner-e-de, luf-o-de, hýr-de	1 ner-e-d-on, luf-o-d-on, hýr-d-on
2 ner-e-de-st, luf-o-de-st, hýr-de-st	2 ner-e-d-on, luf-o-d-on, hýr-d-on
3 ner-e-de, luf-o-de, hýr-de	3 ner-e-d-on, luf-o-d-on, hýr-d-on

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

t ⎫		t ⎫
2 ⎬ nen-e, lufig-e, hýr-e		2 ⎬ nen-en, lufig-en, hýr-en
3 ⎭		3 ⎭

Imperfect T n a.

1 ⎫		1 ⎫
2 ⎬ ner-e-de, luf-o-de, hýr-de		2 ⎬ luf-o-d-en,
3 ⎭		3 ⎭ hýr-d-en

Left column bottom: ner-e-d-en,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		Plur
2 ner e, luf-a, hýr		2 nen-ath, lufi-ath, hýr-ath

Simple Infin
nen-an, lufi-an, hýr-an

Dative Infin
nen-anne, lufi-anne, hýr-anne

Pres. Participle
nen-ende, lufig-ende, hýr-ende

Pass. Participle
ner-e-d, luf-e-d, hýr-e-d

M 2

Infinitive Mood.

206. The infinitive is simply an abstract noun   In
O E the infinitive ending was -an, as *drinc-an, to
drink.*

In the twelfth and following centuries, this -an
became -en (-in) or e.

In Wickliffe, the suffix is for the most part -e ; in
Chaucer -en or -e. This -e after a time became
silent, and the infinitive was only distinguished by
the preposition to (except after an auxiliary verb),
which at first belonged only to the dative or gerundial
infinitive.

" As ha schulde *stupin* and *strecche* forth that swire {neck} "
                                    Juliana, B p 73, A.D. 1210.
" In ful a bitter bath *bathum* ich schal naked "
                             O. E *Miscell* p. 180, A D 1246
" In a bytter bath ich schal *bathe* naked "
                             Ib. p 181, later version
" To *bakbite,* and to *bosten* · and *here* fals witnesse '
                             Piers Plowman, B 11 80

The infinitive in O E was inflected for the dative
by the suffix -e, and was governed by the preposition
to ; as, tô *gehyrann-e, tc hear*   This is some-
times called the gerundial infinitive, in contradis-
tinction to the simple or uninflected infinitive.

It was used chiefly to express purpose , it translated
also Lat supines, gerunds, future participles, and *ut*
with the subjunctive ; as, " what went ye out *for to
see,*" " he is *to blame,*" &c.

            Latin supine in -um.
    " Sôthlîce ût eode se sædere his *sæd tô sâwenne.*"
    — Verily outwent the sower to sow his seed.
                             Matt xiii. 4.

Latin periphrastic conjugation in *-rus* and *-dus*

" We selfe mágon seðthan thá thing the *tô seðthenne* ʋnd,
and brædan thá thing the *tô brædenne* sind "
= We ourselves may seethe the things that are to be sodden,
and roast the things that are to be roasted
                                                        ÆLFRIC

" Hit is sceamu *tô tellanne,* ac hit ne thûhte him nán sceamu *tô
dônne* "
= It is shameful to tell, but it appeared to him no shame
to do —*Chronicle,* A D 1052

Latin supine in *-u.*

" Êðe .. *tô findanne* "
= Easy to find
                                    Ps. lxxvi. 16.

Latin genitive of gerund.

"   "

Sometimes we find the dative infinitive used to mark the
future.
    " Thone calic þe ic *tô drincenne* hæbbe "
    = The cup that I have to drink
                                    Matt xx. 22
    " Ic *tô drincenne* hæbbe."
    = Lat *bibiturus sum.*

The gerundial ending not only took the same form as the
simple infinitive, but it was often confounded with the present
participle in *-ende,* or *-inde* (later *-inge*) in E E and M E
"Theme begunne we to *fleonne* ant turneth to the lufte, ant
this is al that we doth te *deruen* cristene men ant ʒʒin
to then uuele."—*Juliana,* p 44.
    ' Þe synfulle (fasteth) for to *clensen* him, the rightwise for to
    wiþende his rightwisnesse "—*O E Hom.* II p 57

"A¬¡ ¬ʃ ˥ʃ ˥ɔ ᵗʰˢˢ ᵏˢ¬ˡ˥ˢᵈ ˅ˢˡᶦ˥ʳˢˢ ˥ɔ ˢʲ˒ ˜ˣˢ"   �ᵀˢˢˢ ˜ʃ
            ˥ʲˡ   (ʸ ˢ˒˒ ˢˡˢʸᵗᶦ ᵏˢ   ˒ ʳˡˢ ˒ˢ"

"A   ᵖ˒   ˒   ˢ ˒   ˒ ᶦ˒˒   ˒   ˒ˢˢ ˒ ˡˢ ˢᶦ ˢ
      amonge the lettres that were lįstere *to wrytynge* and *to
      spekynge*"—*Ib.* III p 249

That the partıcıple ın -nde could be confounded wıth the ınf.
ın -en ıs seen ın the followıng passage :—

  " But thanke God of heuen for that he hath the *seuene*
    And so thou schalt, my doustır, a good lįf *lyvande*."
                                    Babees Book, p 43.

Participles.

207. The **present** participle is formed by the suffix
-ing, which has replaced M.E. -inde, -ende; O.E.
-end.

The modern form -ing made its appearance ın the
Southern dialects ın the latter part of the twelfth cen-
tury, but the older form ın -*ande* was retained ın the
Northern dialects up to a very late period   (Cp Ben
Jonson's *Sad Shepherd*, ıı 2). Spenser has the archaıc
forms *glitterand* and *trenchand* for *glittering* and *tren-
chant*.

This change of -ınde to -ing has caused great
confusion between verbal nouns ın -ing (O.E. -ung)
and participles ın -ıng (see p. 133).

    " Wommen seueth lyf, and *fedynde* to Kynges."
                                    Trevisa, III. p 183.
   Here *fedynde* = *feeding* = *sustenance*.   See *O E. Hom* ıı.
p. 177, l 23.

    The **Passive** participle ın the **eldest** period *was*
a prefix **ge**, which, after the Norman Conquest, was

reduced to (i, y, e)   Milton has *yclept* = *called.*
He wrongly adds it to a present participle in "star
y-pointing."

The passive participle of all strong verbs ended in
-en. In the thirteenth century we find **n** falling
away; as, *ifunde* = *found*, *ibunde* = *bound*, very
many of our strong verbs have lost their passive parti-
ciples, and others at one time showed a tendency to
do the same. Cp. *spoke* and *eat* in Shakspeare, for
spoken and *eaten.*

The passive participle of weak verbs ended in -d;
as, *lov-e-d.* The primitive form was -th, which is
still preserved in *un-cou*th, literally *unknown;
couth* (O.E. cuth) being the p p. of **can.**

The adjectival character of the verbal suffixes -en (-n) and -ed,
is seen by comparing them with the endings in *gold-en, silken; hot-
headed,* or *e-eyed,* &c.

Anomalous Verbs.

208. Be. The conjugation of the substantive verb
contains these distinct roots, **as, be, was.**

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1. **am**		1. **are**
2. **art**		2. **are**
3. **is**		3. **are**

Past Tense.

1. **was**		1. **were**
2. **wast, wert***		2. **were**
3. **was**		3. **were**

* **Obsolete**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.   Plur.
1, 2, 3. **be** | 1, 2, 3. **be**

Past Tense.

1, 2, 3. **were** | 1, 2, 3. **were**
2. **wert**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2 **be** | 2. **be**

Infinitive   **to be**
Present Participle   **being**
Passive Participle   **been**

The oldest forms are :—

Pres. indic. sing.		
	1.	eo-m, beo-m, beo
	2.	ear-t, bis-t
	3.	is, bi-th
Plural 1, 2, 3		{ sind, sind-on
		beo-th
		ar-on
Past indic. sing	1	wæs
	2	wære
	3	wæs
,, ,, plur	1, 2, 3	wǽr-on
Pres subj sing	1, 2, 3	wes-e, beo, sĩ
,, ,, plur	1, 2, 3	wes-en, beo-n, sĩ-n
Past subj sing.	1, 2, 3	wǽr-e
,, ,, plur.	1, 2, 3.	wǽr-en
Imper. sing	2	wes, beo
,, plur.	2.	wes-ath, beo-th
Infin.		wes-an, beo-n
Act. part.		wes-ende
Pass. part.		gewes-en

In the thirteenth century sındon (are) gives place to **beoth**, or **beth**. In M.E. are becomes very common.

Wesan (ınfin) seems to have dropped out of use ın the twelfth century, leaving **beon** or **ben** as the ordinary form ın use. About the same tıme **geweśen** (p p.) disappeared, and a new p p ıbeon (ben) came ınto use.

In M.E. we fınd the pres. part **be-ende** = *be-ıng.*

Negatıve forms were common ın the fırst three perıods. Cp O E. **neśan** (am not), **neart** (art not), **nıs** (ıs not), **næs** (was not), **nǽron** (were not).

A-m (= *ar-m* = *as-m*) contaıns the root **as**, and **m**, the endıng of the fırst person.

Ar-t (= *as-t*) has the old **-t** of the second person, as ın *shal-t, wıl-t,* &c.

Is (= *as* = *as-th*) has lost ıts suffıx **-th**.

Are (= *ase*) represents the old Northern **ar-on**, and ıs of Scandınavıan orıgın. It has altogether replaced the O.E. *sınd.*

Was. Thıs ıs the past tense of the strong verb, **wesan** *to be.* It has therefore no endıngs to mark the fırst and thırd persons.

Was-t. The true form would be **were** (O.E. *wǽre*) but **wast** arose ın the fourteenth century, through the use of **was** as a second person ın Northern wrıters of the thırteenth century.

> " With ropes *were* thou bounde "
> > FABYAN, *Chronicle,* p. 430.

> " How *were* thow thus baptızed? "
> > MERLIN, p. 428.

> " Before the sun, before the heavens thou *wert.*"
> > MILTON, *Par. Lost.*

Wer-t for **wast** has evıdently been formed from the older *were* (= *wǽre*). It has establıshed ıtself as a subjunctıve form.

Were (= *wǽ-en*) has, lıke **are**, lost ıts personal endıngs.

The root be was conjugated in the present tense, indicative, as late as Milton's time.

I be	we be	(bin)*
thou beest	ye be	,,
he be	they be	,,

" If thou *beest* he." —MILTON, *P. L.* I. 84.

" If thou *be'st* civil."

BEAUMONT and FLETCHER, I. p. 96.

" I think it *be* thine indeed."—*Hamlet.*

" We *are* true men, we *are* no spies, we *be* twelve brethren "
—*Gen.* xlii. 32

" For you *be* as untrue as I."

HEYWOOD, *The Four P.P.*

" The Philistines *be* upon thee."—*Judges,* xvi. 9.

In M. E. beth and bes are used for the third pers. sing. indic.; and for the third pers. future, instead of our *shal be.*

209. Worth = be.

This verb occurs in the English Bible.

" Wo *worth* the day "
=woe be to the day —*Ezek.* xxx. 2
" Wo *worth* the faire gemme vertuelesse !
Wo *worth* that herb also that doth no boote !
Wo *worth* that beauté that is routheless !
Wo *worth* that wyght that tret ech under foote ! "

CHAUCER, *Tr & Cr.* II 49. ll. 344-7.

The O.E *weorthan* (pret. *wearth,* p p. *worden*) *to become,* occasionally replaced *wesan* and *beon, to be.* In M. E. *worthe* = *to be,* as well as *to become.* In the third person **worth** = *shall be.*

" What shal *worthe* of us."—*M. Arth* l. 1817, ed Furnivall
" For-þı I conseille alle þe comune to lat the catte *worthe.*"

Piers Plowman, B Prol. l. 187

" To-morwe *worth* ynade þe maydenes braydale."

Ib. II. l. 43. ̣̣

" This maide *worth* a slepe "—*Early Eng. Poems,* xxi. 38.

* Archaic

210. Can.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense

Sung.		Plur.
1. can		1. can
2. canst		2. can
3. can		3. can

Past Tense

1. could		1. could
2. couldst (couldest)		2 could
3 could		3 could

In O.E can was thus conjugated —

		Sing.		Plur.
Pres Indic	1	can, con	1	cunn-on
	2	can-st	2	,,
	3	can	3	,,
Past Indic	1.	cu-the	1	cu-th-on
	2	cu-th-est	2	,,
	3	cu-the	3	,,
Pres Subj 1, 2, 3		cunn-e	1, 2, 3	cunn-on
Past Subj 1, 2, 3		cu-the	1, 2, 3	cu-th-on
Pass. Part		cu-th	Infin	cunn-an

Can (1st and 3rd persons) has no personal suffix, because it was originally a strong form signifying *I knew*. Cp *shall, may, wot,* &c.

Coul-d (= O.E *cu-the,* M.E. *couthe, cou-de*) is a weak form. The letter 1 has crept in from false analogy to the past tenses of *shall* and *will*.

"And the Normans ne *couthe* speke tho bote hor owe spech{e} "
—*Spec of*{}*E Eng* 1 A 215.

The verb can (con) once signified *to be able, to know.*

"Thou shalt never *conne* knowen "
CHAUCER.

"Thou schalt not *kunne* seie nay."
PECOCK, *Skeat's Spec.* p 50

"I *can* many a quaint game "
The World and the Child, O E. Plays, I p. 245

"I trow thou *canst* but little skill of play "—*Ib* I. p 261.

"For we be clerks all, and *can* our neck verse "
HICKSCORNER, *O E Plays,* I p. 159

"A mous that moche good *couthe* (knew) "
Piers Plowman, B. p. 8

"O she *could* the art of woman most feelingly "
WEBSTER, ed Dyce, p 250

Shakespeare has "to *con* thanks" = *to acknowledge* or *give thanks*

[illegible]
Cursor Mundi, F. l. 6398

Con, *learn*, *study* (*con* a lesson), has **conned** for past tense and p p.

Cunning (adj) = *knowing*, is a present participle of **can,** or **con.** It is also found as an abstract noun = *knowledge*.

"And yhit thai er ful *unkunand* "
HAMPOLE, *P of C.* l. 152.

"*Cunning* Latin books "
The Four Elements, O E. Plays, I. 7

"Works of *cunning* "—*Ib.*

"Nother (neither) virtue nor no other *cunning* "
Ib. p 22.

Couth in **uncouth** is the old p p of **can.** See Chaucer's *C. T. Prol* l. 14.

"Mayde to the he send (sends) his sonde (message)
And wilneth (wishes) for to beo (be) the *cūth* (known)."
O E. Misc. p. 96, l 104.

211. Dare.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur
1. dare		1 dare
2. darest (dar'st)		2 dare
3. dares (dare)		3. dare

Past Tense

1 durst		1 durst
2 durst		2 durst
3. durst		3 durst

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense.		*Past Tense.*
Sing 1, 2, 3 dare		Sing. 1, 2, 3. durst
Plur. 1, 2, 3 dare		Plur 1, 2, 3 durst

Old English conjugation of Dare

		Sing		Plur
Pres. Indic	1	dear	1.	durr-on
	2	dears-t	2	,,
	3	dear	3.	,,
Past Indic	1	dors-te	1.	dors-t on
	2	dors-t-est	2.	,,
	3	dors-te	3.	,,
Pres Subj	1, 2, 3	durr-e	1, 2, 3. durr-on
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3	dors-te	1, 2, 3. dorst-on
Inf.		durr-an	

Dare. The root is *dars*, which appears in the past tense, durst.

The old 3rd person singular dare (M.E *dar*) has given place to dares, the former being used only in

the subjunctive mood Cp. *Tempest*, III. 2, *Rich. II*
v. 5.

Dare, *to challenge*, makes a new past tense and
p p dared. Cp. owe, ought, and owed.

212. Shall.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense

Sing	Plur.
1. **shall**	1. **shall**
2. **shalt**	2. **shall**
3. **shall**	3. **shall**

Past Tense

1. **should**	1. **should**
2. **shouldst, shouldest**	2. **should**
3. **should**	3. **should**

Shall was conjugated in O E as follows —

		Sing		Plur
Pres Indic	1.	sceal	1	scul-on
	2.	sceal-t	2	,,
	3.	sceal	3.	,,
Past Indic	1	sceol-de	1	sceol-d-on
	2	sceol-d-est	2	,,
	3	sceol-de	3.	,,
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3	scyl-e	1, 2, 3	scyl-en
Past Subj	1, 2, 3	sceol-de	1, 2, 3	sceol-d-on
Infin.		scul-an		

One of the oldest senses of **shall** is *owe*.

"And by that faith I *shal* to God and yow."
CHAUCER, *Tr and Cr* l 1600

" Voryef me thet ich the *ssel* "
= Forgyve me that I owe thee.
Ayenbite, p 115.

" Hu mucel *scealt* thû."
= How much owest thou.
Luke xvi 5.

" Ân, se hym *scolde* týn thûsend punda."
= One that owed him ten thousand pounds
Matt. xviii. 24.

Another early meaning arising from the notion of debt is obligation, necessity, hence **shall** often signifies *ought, must*

" Be ûre æ he *sceal* sweltan."
= By our law he ought to diê
John xix 7.

" Men seyn, ache *schalle* endure in that forme "
MAUNDEVILIE, p 4.

" Thou *shalt* not steal "

" You *should* listen more attentively "

It must be recollected that **shall** is only a tense auxiliary, that is a sign of the future, in the *first* person. The following doggerel lines point out the distinctive uses of shall and will.

" In the first person simply shall foretells,
In will a threat, or else a promise dwells ,
Shall, in the second and the third, does threat ,
Will simply then foretells a future feat."

Grimm supposes that the original meaning of shal is *I have killed*, I must pay the fine or (*wergeld*) ; hence, I am obliged, I must. The idea of *failure, offence, guilt,* is seen in Sansk. *skhal, to fail ;* Lat. *scelus, fault, crime.*

A strange mingling of *should* and *owe* occurs in Fabyan's *Chronicle,* p. 257.

" Obedience that the *should owe* (= owed) to the see of Canterbury."

213. Will.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	Sing		Plur.
1.	will	1	will
2.	wilt	2	will
3.	will	3	will

Past Tense

1.	would	1.	would
2.	wouldst	2	would
3.	would	3	would

O.E conjugation of will

		Sing		Plur
Pres Indic.	1.	wile, wille	1	will-ath
	2	wil-t	2	,,
	3	wile	3	,,
Past Indic	1	wol-de	1	wol-d-on
	2	wol-d-est	2	,,
	3	wol-de	3	,,
Pres. Subj	1, 2, 3	wille	1, 2, 3	will-en
Past Subj	1, 2, 3.	wol-de	1, 2, 3	wol-d-on
Infin.		will-an	Pres Part	will-ende

The original meaning of will is *to desire, wish* (cp Lat. *volo*).

In M.E we find a form wol, *will*, which still survives in won't = *wol not*. Nill = *will not*, occurs in *Hamlet*, v. 1; *Taming of the Shrew*, ii. 1.

In O.E. we find two weak verbs, willan and willian, *to desire, wish*. Willan survives in the verb will, *to desire, be*

willing, to exercise the will, which is conjugated regularly as an independent verb. 1 will, 2 willest, 3 willeth, wills, &c., past tense willed   But we often find in the older periods the two forms mixed up.

> " Wel aȝte ihc *willen* hire to wif "
>
> <div align=right>*Fl. and Bl* p 67.</div>
>
> " They ne shuld not *willen* so "
>
> <div align=right>CHAUCER, R. 6923.</div>

" Gif thu *wilt,* thu miht me geclænsian   Ic *wille ;* beo ge-clænsod "

> " If ȝou *wilt,* thou mayest make me clean.   I *wil ;* be cleansed."—*Matt* viii. 2, 3
>
> " Abraham *wald* in his lure,
> That Ysaac had wgd a wiue "
>
> <div align=right>*Cursor Mundi,* G l 3215.</div>
>
> " Abraham *willed* in his lyue,
> That Isaac hadde weddede a wyue."
>
> <div align=right>*Ib* T.</div>

" For in evil, the best condition is not to *wil ;* the second, not to *can* "—BACON, *Ess* xi

The old p p wold for wild, or willed, was in use as late as the beginning of the sixteenth century

> " The fomy brıdel with the bitte of gold,
> Governeth he ryght as himselfe hath *wolde.*"
>
> <div align=right>CHAUCER, *Leg. Dıdonıs,* l. 284.</div>

" How be it he myghte have entred the cytie if he had *wolde.* (= wished) —FABYAN, *Chronicle,* p. 625

<div align=center>

244. **May.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

</div>

Sing.	Plur.
1. may	1. may
2. mayst, mayest	2. may
3. may	3. may

Past Tense.

Sing	Plur.
1. **might**	1. **might**
2. **mightst,mightest**	2. **might**
3. **might**	3. **might**

The oldest forms of may are :—

	Sing		Plur
Pres. Indic	1 mæg	1 mágon
	2 meah-t	2. ,,
	3 mæg	3 ,,
Past Indic	1 meah-te		1. meah-t-on
Pres Subj 1, 2, 3 mǽge		1, 2, 3 mǽg-en
Past Subj 1, 2, 3 meah-te		1, 2, 3 meah-t-on
Infin mag-an Pres Part. mæg-ende		Pass Part meah-t

The **y** ın **may** represents an older **g** (cp. Ger *mögen*). Sometimes g passes into **w**, hence the M.E. **I mow**, *I may*, **I mought**, *I might*, pres. part. **mowende, mowynge** ; pass. part. **moght**.

Mayst is a new form that arose ın M.E. for mih-t, (See Chaucer's *Astrolabe*, p. 3).

May has the force of the Lat *posse, to be able* It is the preterite of an old root mag, to *increase, grow*, which exists in **mai-n**, (O L. mæg-en), migh-t

> " Helle gatu ne *mágon* ongeăn þe "
> = Hell's gates *cannot prevail* against thee
>   *Matt* xvi 18
> " Thatt ıfell gast maȝȝ oferr tha
>   Thatt follȝhen barrness thæwess "
> = The evil ghost *has power* over those that follow
>   barns' habits
>   *Orm* i p. 279.
> " If thou *maist* ony thing, help us "
>   WICKLIFFE, *Mark* ix. 4
> " Thai salle *mow* passe aywhare þai wille."
>   HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 7993.

" As nere as they shall *mowe* (be able) "
            Nat. MSS. I. 20, *Hen. VII*   Quoted in
                        Earle's Phil. of Eng Tongue, p 284
" To lakken *mowynge* (power) to done yuel "
            CHAUCER, *Boethius*, ed. Morris, p. 124.

215. Owe.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
owe		1. owe
2. owest		2. owe
3. oweth		3. owe

Past Tense.

1. ought		1. ought
2. oughtest		2 ought
3. ought		3. ought

Inf. owe   Pres Part. owing

O E forms of Owe —

	Sing			Plur
Pres. Indic.	1 âh		1	âg-on
	2 âg-e		2	,,
	3 âh		3	,,
Past Indic.	1. âh-te●		1, 2, 3	âh-t-on

Infin âg-an ;   Pres. Part. âg-ende ,   Pass. Part âg-en.

In M.E we find some new forms, as, owest (= âge);
ought and owed (= agen, p p).

The original meaning of owe is *to possess, have*,
whence the secondary notion, *to have as a duty, to
owe, to be under an obligation.*

Oughte is of course a weak past tense, and is now

used as a present and past tense to signify moral
obligation.

When **owe** signifies to be in debt, it is conjugated
regularly.

1. **Owe**, 2. **owest**, 3. **owes, oweth**, &c.; past
tense and p.p **owed**.

Ought, in older writers, is used as the past tense
of **owe**, *to be in debt*.

> " Thu sulde thet thou *ouhtest*."
> = Thou didst pay what thou didst *owe*
> *Ancren Riwle*, p 406
> " He *owôte* to him 10,060 talents "
> WICKLIFFE, *Matt* xviii 24.
> "One of his fellow servants which *ought* him an hundred
> pence "—BECON, I 154
> " There of the Knight, the which that castle *ought*,
> To make abode that night he greatly was besought."
> SPENSER, *F. Q* VI iii 2.

See Shakspeare's I *Henry IV* iii 3.

Own is a derivative of owe.

Examples of owe as an independent verb :—

> " Hwæt dô ic thæt ic ôce lîf *âge* ? "
> = What must I do that I may have everlasting life?
> *Mark*, x 17.
> " *Ahte* ic geweald "
> = Had I power —*Cæd* p 23, l 32.
> " The mon the lutel *ah* "
> = The man that has little —*Lay* 3058
> " To makien hire cwen*oof* al thet he *ouhte.*"
> = To make her queen of all that he possessed.
> *Ancren Riwle*, p. 390.
> " Steuen that the lond *auht* "
> R. OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle*, l 3096.
> " Ye shal *owe* and have everlasting life "
> *Gest. Rom.* p. 29.

> " I am not worthy of the wealth I *owe*."
>   *All's Well that Ends Well*, II 5.
> " *Owing* her heart, what need you doubt her ear "
>   FORD

Owe as an auxiliary appears in Laȝamon's Brut, l. 8289,
" he *ah* to don" = *he has to do, he should do*
        " Evel *owe* no mon to do to other "
                                       Cursor Mundi, T l 1973.

216. Must.

Must was originally the past tense of the old verb,
motan (Ger. *mussen*) *to be able, be obliged* it is now
used in all persons and tenses, to denote necessity
and obligation.

The O.E forms are : —

		Sing		Plur	
Pres Indic.	1	môt	1	mô-t-on	
	2	môs t	2	,,	
	3	môt	3	,,	
Past Indic	1	môs te	1, 2, 3	môs-t-on	

The old verb mot had the sense of *may, can, must*,
&c ; and must = *might, could*, &c

In the sense of *may*, *mot* is found as late as 1522
in *The World and the Child*.

> " But, Sir Frere, evil *mot* thou the [thrive] "
>   *O E Plays*, ed Hazlitt, p. 257

Spenser occasionally employs it though it had
become archaic in his time (see *Faerie Queene*,
1 2, 37).

The s in must does not belong to the root, but was inserted
to unite the suffix -t of the second person, and -te of the past
tense to the root, most (second person) = mot-s-t = mot-t
O.E. wäst (knowest) = wat-s-t ; mo-s-te (past tense) =
mot-s-te = mot-te ; O.E wiste (knew) = wit-s-te = wit-te.

217. Wit.

INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1. wot		1. wot
2. wot [wottest] [1]		2. wot ,,
3. wot [wotteth]		3. wot ,,

Past Tense

1. wist [wotted]		1. wist [wotted]
2. wist ,,		2. wist [wotted]
3. wist [wotted]		3. wist [wotted]

Inf. to wit   Pres. Part. witting [wotting]

The O.E. *witan* was thus conjugated :—

	Sing		Plur
Pres. Indic	1 wât		1 wit-on
	2 wâs-t		2 ,,
	3 wât	1, 2, 3	,,
Past Indic	1 wis-te		wis-t-on
Infin. wit-an.	Pres. Part. wit-ende.		Pass. Part. wit-en.
			[M E iwis-t]

Wot was originally the perfect of the root wit (cp Lat. *vdeo*, Gr. *οἶδα*, *I know*, *from* ἰδεῖν, *to see*), and meant "I have seen," hence "I know"

Its infinitive to wit is used now only as an adverb
= *namely.*

The pres. part. exists in wittingly.

For the presence of s in wist, see must, § 216, p. 181.

The pass. part. appears in **unwist, unknown,
undiscovered** (Surrey), and in the old proverb,
"beware of **had-I-wist,**" *i.e* "beware of saying regretfully **had I known.**"

> " Dead long ygoe, I *wote,* thou haddest bin "
> > SPENSER, *F. Q* i 2, 20
> > See *Gen* xxi 26.

" But *wottest* thou what I say, man "
> *The World and the Child,* O E. Plays, I p 264.

" Ag ... n, who *wotteth* not what words were spoken against
St Paul "—JEWEL'S *Apol.* ed Jelf, p 3   See *Gen*
xxxix 8

" He *wist* not what to say "—*Mark* ix 6

" And why he left your court, the gods themselves, *wotting*
no more than I, are ignorant "—*Winter's Tale,* III 2
> " I do thee well *to wit* "
> > J HEYWOOD, *the Pardoner and the Friar.*

" Wouldest thou *wit?* "—*Everyman,* O E Plays, I. p. 103.

" For, *wit* thou well, thou shalt make none attorney "—*Ib*

" I woll handle my captive so,
That he shall not well *wot* wither to go "
> *Jack Juggler,* O E Plays, II. p 115.

218 Do, in "this will do," has the sense of the Lat.
valere.   It represents the O.E. dugan, E.E. duhen,
avail, be good, (Ger. taugen) cp. *doughty* = *valiant.*

> O E dug-an

	Pres. Indic. Sing	1. deáh
		2 dug-e
		3 deáh
	„ „ Plur.	1, 2, 3 dug-on
	Past Indic. Singe	doh-te

" Ring ne broche nabbe ȝe ne no swuch thing thet ou ne
deah [= *deah*] "
= Have neither ring nor broach, nor any such thing that *is* not
good for ȝou to have —*Ancren Riwle,* p. 421

> " And sau that his dede litel *doht* [= *did,* availed]."
> > *Met. Hom.* p. 149.

" What *dowes* me the dedayn."
= What avails me the displeasure.

<div align="right">Allit. Poems, p. 90.</div>

" That nost *dowed* bot the deth in the depe stremez "
That nought availed, but the death in the deep streams.

<div align="right">Ib p 47.</div>

219. Own = *grant, confess*, has probably arisen
out of O.E. an, (E E. on) = *I grant*, unn-on, *u e*
grant; O.E. unnan (Ger gönnen), *to grant*.

" Ich *on* wel that ȝe witen."
= I own well that ye know.—*Kath.* 1761
" ȝif thu hit wel *unnest* "
= If thou well concedest it.—*Ancren Riwle,* p 282.

220. Mun = *shall, must.*

" I *mun* be married a Sunday."

<div align="right">Ralph Roister Douster, before 1553</div>

In the fourteenth century mun (*mon*) as an auxiliary
verb = *shall, must*, was very common in the Nurthern-
dialects.

" I *mun* walke on mi way."—*Ant. Arth.* xxv 3.
"——than *mon* he gyf lyght
Als fer als the sone dose and ferrer "

<div align="right">HAMPOLE, P of C. p. 246.</div>

" Thai thoght that kynd him *mond* forbede "
= They thought that nature wculd forbid him.

<div align="right">C. Mundi, C. 1 1105</div>

The original meaning of *mun, mon*, was *I have remem-
bered*; hence, *I intend, mind.*

	Pres.	Perf	Inf
O.E	ge-man	go-munde	ge-munan (memmuse)
Icel.	man }	munda }	muŋa (recordari)
	mun }	munna }	munu } (μέλλειν)
			mundu }

" T...   "
   W...

" He wolde *mone* "
= He would remember
                              R OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle*, l. 4811

221 The verb need, when followed by an infinitive, some-
times loses its personal ending -s, as " it *need*[1] not be "

In O E. to need meant only to *compel, force*; but from a
privative *thurfan* (Ger. *durfen*) *to need*, was formed the fol-
lowing :—

Pres. Indic. Sing			
	1	thearf	I need
	2	thearf-t	Thou needest
	3	thearf	He needs
,, ,, Plur.	1, 2, 3.	thurf-on	We need, &c.

In M E. we find *thar* for *thar*,

" Have thou ynough, what *thar* the recche or care "
= If thou have enough, why needeth thee reck or care
                              CHAUCER, *C T.* l 5911

Auxiliary Verbs.

222. Auxiliary verbs supply the places of verbal
suffixes to form voice, mood, and tense.

The passive voice is expressed by the passive par-
ticiple, and the verb to BE.

In O E. *weorthan* and *wæan* were used with the passive par-
ticiple to form the passive voice

Should and would are often used as signs of the
subjunctive mood.

The use of *would*, as an auxiliary of the past subjunctive, is as
early as the thirteenth century.

---

[1] Some explain *need* as subjunctive = *would need*, but cp.
me thinc in M E. for *me-thinks*.

Let us a sign of the imperative mood, as, *let* us go
= *go we.* See § 180, p 132.   In M.E. *let* was used in
the same way as *do* = *cause, make.*

The tense auxiliars are (1) *have, had*; and is,
was (with intransitive verbs) for the perfect tenses;
as, "he *has asked,*" "he *is come.*"

(2) Shall and will for the future; but other shades
of a future tense may be expressed by various modes,
as, "I *am going* to see him;" "I *am about* to see
him;" "I *am upon the point* of seeing him," &c.

(3) Do and did are used for forming emphatic
tenses, as, "I *do* see," "I *did* see"

Do and did originally had a *causative* sense before
another verb in the infinitive.

> "Thou most *do* me it have "
> = Thou must *cause* him to have it
> *Gamelyn,* 1 159
> " And som-tyme *doth* Theseus hem to reste "
> = And sometimes Theseus *makes* them to rest
> *Knightes Tale.*

In the fourteenth century did was not uncommon
as a mere tense auxiliary.

> " Summe gouleden and summe *dude* brenne."
> = Some yelled and others did burn —*O E Misc.* p. 224.

In M E. gan, *can, con* (began) was used for did.

> " P . state he mey le ct de
> \   '   '   n ' ' —*Horn* p 22.
> ' l. ¿ '' '   : 4''
>   \v : cy ' ' n r m n
>   A g ' ' '   ''
> " Gret ioi *can* his frendes mak[e] "
>   *Cursor Mundi,* C. l. 3016.
> " Criste of hym his crowne con take."
>   *Pol. Rel. and Love Poems,* p. 97, l. 121.

CHAPTER XI

Adverbs.

223 **Adverbs** are, for the most part, abbreviations of words or phrases, or cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns.

According to their origin or form, we may divide them into the following classes :—

224 I. Adverbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives.

Genitive.—Need-s = *of necessity*, M E *nedes,* E E. *nêde* (instr.).

A-night-s, now-a-day-s, al-way-s, be-time-s, el-se (O E. *elles*), eft-soon-s, un-a-ware-s, on-ce, twi-ce, thri-ce, whil s-t, a-mid-s-t, a-mong-s-t, be-twi-x-t.

Twice = O E *twi-wa,* E E. *twi-e,* M E *twies;* thrice = O E. *thri-wa,* E E. *thrie,* M E *thries ,* -wa = -war = *time ;* once, O.E *ane,* E E. *ene,* M.E. *an-es, on-es, an-s, on-s*

The -st in *whilst, &c* represents an older -es(-s) Cp M E *whil-es, amidd-es, among-es,* &c.

Dative.—Whil-om (O.E. *hwil-um*). from *while* = *time.* Seld-om (O.E *seld-um*) from O.E. *seld* = *rare.*

All adverbs ending in -meal once had the dative suffix -um
Cp O E. *lim-mæl-um* = *limb-meal* The suffix -um formed
distributives like Latin -im   Cp M E. *table-mele* = Latin
tabillatim —Palladius on *Husbandrie*, p 66

Little by little = M E *lytlum* and *lytlum*.

Accusative.—Alway (O.E *ealne-weg*), otherwise,
sometime, the while, now-a-day, backward, &c.

Prepositional Forms.—The chief prepositions
used to form adverbial expressions are, a, (an), on,
in, at, of, be, (by), to.

An (= in, on: anon = in one second. In M E.
we find *on-an* = *anon.*

A = in, on. a-bed, a-day, a-sleep, a-loft, &c.;
a-broad, a-cold, a-good, a-twain, &c

On, in: on sleep, on high, in-deed, in vain, in
short, in two, &c

At: at jar, at odds, at large, at night, at length,
at best, at first, &c.

Of (for a): of-kin, of late, of old, of new[c];
Of (for older genitives), of a truth, of right.

Be, by: be-times, be-cause, by turns, by
degrees, by hundreds.

To: to-day, to-night, to-gether
Per: per-chance, per-haps

An (= in, on) occurs in E E and M E before words beginning
with a *vowel* or *h*; as, *an eve, in the evening , an honde, in hand*
A is used before words beginning with a consonant
     "Ich am an elder than ich was *a* wintre and *a* lore "—O E.
          Hom ii. 220
This *a* was a separate word as late as the seventeenth century
It is very common before verbal nouns Cp a-fishing, a-hunting,
a-weeping.
As *on* is only another form of *an*, it has replaced *an* before a
vowel

"Set our teeth *an* edge [= *on* edge]."
The Four Book of *Princes*, p. 116.

A and on, sometimes occur side by side : a-board and on board, a-ground and on ground

An takes the place of in, in the phrase "ever and anon ," where *an-on* = M E in *oon*, in one state

"Ever in *oon*"—CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, p 15

"Ever and *anon* it (earth) must turn about."
HOLLAND's *Pliny*, p 1.

Sometimes *an* *end* = in *oon* = continually

As of takes the place of a in *akin*, &c so a sometimes takes the place of of

"I have heard *a* the horses walking *a'* (on) the top of Paules."
—DEKKER, *Satiromastix*,[*] C. 2

"What manner *a* man."—BECON.

Cp. "*a* the appel tre" = *o* that appel tre = of the apple tree—*C Mundi*, p 86

This *a* for *o* or of explains , man-*a*-war, justice-*a*-peace (Dekker) , two-*a*-clock = two *a'* clock = two *o'* the clock ; jack-*an*-apes.

In M.E we find *of* long, *of* new, *of*-fer (afar), and even *of goo* = *goo* (cp O E. *ofgān*, to go off).

Be sometimes preceded the dative adverb in O E as *be ānfealdum* = *by one fold* = *singly*, from which we have formed our expressions, *by hundreds* and *by fiftes* = O E. *be hundredum* and *be fiftegum* In E E the dative ending dropped, and we have *bī seven*, *bī seove*, = by *sixes*, by *sevens*, &c Cp. *by piecemeal* for *piecemeal*, (Beaumont and Fletcher)

At especially before superlatives is a contraction of *at the*, M E *atte* In O E this *the* was in the dative case. *At random* = Fr *à randon*

225 Many adjectives are used as adverbs, especially those with irregular comparisons : *far*, *forth*, *ful*, *ill*, *late*, *little*, *much*, *nigh*, *near*, *well*.

Many monosyllabic adjectives are used as adverbs, as, to work *hard*; to talk *fast*; to speak *loud*; to aim *high*.

In the earlier stages of the language, the *adverbial* form was marked by a final -e, as, *hard* (adj.), *harde* (adv.), &c   When this -e became silent, then the adjectival and adverbial form became identical.

We ·can thus easily understand the use of *godly* as adjective and adverb; (cp. "a *godly* life," and "to live *godly*.")   In O E the distinction was plainly marked, *e g*, *god*-lıc (adj.), *god*-lıc-e (adv.).

The adverbial -e was probably a *dative* suffix. In M E we find instances of the use of this -e: they pleye *hastiliche* and *swiftliche* (Trevisa).

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, the suffix -ly was often dropped .   as,

"*Foolish* bold."   "*Grievous* sick."
       BECON.   SHAKESPEARE.
Cp. " *Wondrous* wise "
The history of *wondrous* (wonderfully) is a curious one   In O E the adverb was *wundr-um*, which in M E became *wundes*, *wonder*, T.E *wonders*   In E E we find *wonderloche*, in M E *wonderis*, and in T.E *wonderly*.   In Ford's works we find " *woundy* bad," *i e wonderfully* or *very bad*

226 II. Pronominal Adverbs.

Many adverbs are derived from the pronominal stems, *the*, *he*, *who*.

PRONOMINAL STEMS	PLACE WHERE.	MOTION TO	MOTION FROM	TIME WHEN	MANNER	CAUSE.
who	where	whither	whence	when	how	why
the	there	thither	thence	then	thus	the
he	here	huther	hence	—	—	—

The suffixes -re and -ther in *the-re, he̩-re, whe-re, thi-ther*, &c., were originally locative.

The -n in *the-n, whe-n*, &c., is an accusative suffix. See pronouns, § 131, p. 107 ; § 146, p. 119.

The -ce (M.E. -es), in *then-ce*, &c., represents an older -an, cp. O E. *than-an* (thence), *heon-an* (hence); *hwan-an* (whence).

The O.E. -an denotes motion from: *ǽst-an=from the east*, so *thenc̶e̶=than-an = from that* (place).

The, before comparatives, as the *more* (= O E. *thȳ máre*, Lat *eo magis*) is the instrumental case of the definite article, the.

Lest has lost the instrumental the. In O E we find *thȳ lǽs the*, E E. *les the*, M.E *leste* = lest.

Thus is the instrumental case of this.

How (O.E. *hu*, E.E. *huw̨*) ⸱⸱⸱ why 'O F *h̶·⸱*) are the inst. cases of who. C. ⸱ ⸱ ⸱. ⸱⸱ ⸱ .
(reason), wherefore, for-thy = for that (reason), therefore

Yea, ye-s, ye-t, are from a relative stem ya, which also had a demonstrative force, as in yon, yond, yonder.

That and so are often used as *affirmative* adverbs.

In nay, no, not, now, we have a demonstrative stem, na.

In O E. *ne = not*
  " Eart thû of thyses leorningcnihtum ? *nic ne* eom ic."
  = Art thou of this man's disciples ? not I, I am not
                                              John xviii. 17.
Negatives are often repeated for emphasis.
  " *Ne* nán *ne* dorste nán thing âcsian."
  = No one durst ask him anything.
                                        Matt. xxii. 46.

" *Ne* com ic *nd* Crist."—*John* i. 18

" But he *ne* lefte nought for rayn *ne* thonder "

CHAUCER, *Prol.* l. 492.

O E. ne was also a conjunction = nor. See Spenser, *Faerie Queene,* I. i. 28.

Not (= O.E. *nôht*, M.E. *noght, nat*) = *no whit*, (nothing), has replaced the old **nâ, ne.** It has already been shown to be an indefinite pronoun. See **aught,** § 164, p. 125.

" Ne wen thu *nowiht* leone feder that tu affeare me swa
    = ne lef thu *nawt* leone feder that tu offeare me swa.
    Ween thou not dear father that thou may frighten me
    so."—*Juliana,* pp. 12, 13

" Ac hit ne helpeth heom *nowiht* "—*O E. Misc.* p. 152.

Aught, naught, nothing, something, some-what, muchwhat, anywhit, &c. may be used as adverbs.

So (= O E swâ) was used as a relative pronoun in E.E.; from it we derive **also** (O.E. *ealswâ*), which, by loss of l, has dwindled down to **as** = M.E. *als* = E.E. *alse* = O E. *eal-swa.*

Ay, sometimes used for **yes,** is the same as the adverb **aye** = *ever.*

For ever or aye we find in O E a , E E o, oo, ay, ey. Cp. O.E. *â-hwar, æg-hwær* = *any-where*; E.E. *o-whar, ohwaer.*

What (O E *hwæt*) = *why* (Lat. *quid*) is an adverb :—

" *What* do you prate of service ?"

SHAKESPEARE, *Cor.* iii. 3.

227. III. Adverbs formed from Prepositions.

Aft, in "fore and *aft*," O.E. *æf-t-an*, after. Af is another form of of (= *from*). Cp. *af-ter*, *af-ter-wards*.

Be, by, *by and by*, *hard-by*, *be-sides*, *be-hind*, *b-ut be-neath*, &c.

For, *for-th*, *for-thwith*, *a-fore*, *forward* (= M E. *forth-ward*).

Fro = *from*; "to and fro."

In, *with-in*, E.E. *in-with*; M E. *bin* = O E. *binnan* = *within*

Neath, *be-neath*, *under-neath*.

Cp. *ne-ther*, O E. *ni-ther*, and Sansk. *ni* = *down*.

On, *on-ward*, *on-wards*.

Of, *-off*, *a-down* (O.E. of *dún* = *from the hill*). See

To, *too*; *to ward*, &c.

Through, *thorough*, *thoroughly*, *throughly*.

Up, *up-per*, *up-wards*, *upp-er-most*.

Out, *with-out*, *a-b-out*, *b-ut*. (See **Preposi-tions**. § 230, p. 195. § 231, p. 196.)

228. IV. Compound Adverbs.

Many are given under the head of **prepositional forms**. (See § 224, p. 188)

There, here, and where, are combined with (1) prepositions, (2) adverbs, (3) indefinite pronouns to form compound adverbs:—*there-of*, *there-to*, *there-*

o

*from, thereby, &c.; where-so-ever, where-ever, &c.,
else-where, some-where, no-where.*

Everywhere = *ever-y-where*, E.E. *ever ihwar* (Ancren Riwle,
p 200), *y-where* = E E *i-hwar*, *i-hwer* = O E *ge-hwær* There
was a M E *oywhere*, *oywhere* [which was also combined with
ever] = O E *æg-hwær*, *everywhere* Cp O E *ihwær*, M E.
awher, *owher*, *owwher* = anywhere

In O E we have very few compounds of *there*, *here*, and
where, with prepositions , but they are numerous in E E

The pronominal adverbs and their compounds, *as where*,
where-of, *where-to*, have the force of relative pronouns

The compounds of *there*, *here*, *where*, with prepositions are
almost all archaic   We replace *there-of*, *there-to*, &c by *of
that*, *of it*, *to that*, *to it*, &c , *where-of*, &c by *of which*, &c
and *here in*, &c by *in this*, &c

These compounds, being followed by the preposition, resemble
the construction of *that*, and the O E indeclinable relative *the*.

"Thæt bed *the* se lama *on* læg "
= The bed *that* the lame man lay *on*
= The bed *whereon* [= on which] the lame man lay
                                            Mark 11 4.
" The ston *that* he leonede *to*."
= The stone *whereto* he leant.
                                            Vernon MS.

Some elliptical expressions containing a verb are
used as adverbs, as *may-be, may-hap, how-be it, as it
were, to be sure, to wit.*

CHAPTER XII.

Prepositions.

229. Prepositions are so named, because they were originally prefixed to the verb to modify its meaning. Many prepositions still preserve their *adverbial* meaning (cp. *for-swear, be-times*, &c.). Some relations denoted by prepositions may be expressed by case-endings. Prepositions are either simple or compound.

230. I Simple Prepositions.

At (O.E *æt*, Lat. *ad*).

By (O.E. *be, bi*) The original meaning is *about, concerning* Another form of it is O.E. *umbe*, M.E. *umb, um*, cp. Gr ἀμφί, Lat. *amb, am*.

For (O E. *for*, Lat. *pro*).

Fro-m (O E *fram*).

Fro (E E. *fra*).

The m in *from* is a superlative suffix The roots for and fro are connected with each other, and with far and fore. Cp. Lat. *pro, per, præ*.

In, on (O.E. *in*, on, an, Gr. ἐν, Lat. *in*).

Of, off (O E. *of* = *from*, Lat. *ab*, Gr. ἀπό).

O 2

Out (O.E. *út*, cp. *utter, utmost*)
To (O.E. *tó*). It has often been the sense of "for."
Up (O E *up*, Lat. *s-ub*).
With (O.E *with, wither*, from, against). We have preserved the original force of *with* in *with-stand* &c. The sense of the Lat. *cum* was usually expressed in O E. by *mid*; Goth. *mith*, Gr. *μετα*.

231. II Compound Prepositions.

(1) Comparatives.

Af-ter (O E. *æf-ter*), is a comparative of the root *af = of = from*. The suffix -ter is the same as -ther in *whe-ther*, &c.

Ov-er (O E. *of-er*, Goth. *uf-ar*; Lat. *s-uper*, Gr. *ὑπέρ*), is a comparative of the root of *or* or *uf*. We have the same root in O.E *ufe-weard*, E E. *uvç-weard = upward, a-b-ove*   ; -

Un-der (O E *under*, Lat *inter*) contains the root *in* and the comparative suffix -der = -ther.

In E E. *under = between; under that = between that; meanwhile.*

Through (O.E. *thur-h;* Gr. *dur-ch*), contains the same root as the Lat. *tra-ns*, frcm the root *thar* or *tar, to go beyond, to cross.*

(2) Prepositions compounded with Prepositions.

B-ut (O E. *b-ut-an, = be-ut-an, bi-ut-an*) = **be** (*by*) + **ut** (*out*).
A-b-out (O.E *á-b-utan = á-be-ut'an*) = **a** (*on*) + **be** (*by*) + **out**.

A-b-ove (O.E. *b-uf-an* = *be-uf-an*) = a<ton> + be (*by*) + ove (*up*)

Unto (M E. *until*), is a compound of unt and to The same root exists in Goth. *und*, O E. *óth* = *onth* = *unto*

In-to, up-on, be-fore, with-in, through out, be-neath, under neath, &c.

(3) PREPOSITIONS FORMED FROM NOUNS.

A-gain, a-gain-s-t (O E *on-geán, tó-gegnes*)

A-mong (O E *ge-mong, on-ge-mong*, E E *on-mang, bi-mong*), a = *on*, mong = *ming-*l-ing, mixing Cp. E E *monglen, to mix*, *monglung = mingling*

> Other prepositions of this sort are *in-stead of = in the place of,* (stead = place) = *in lieu of*, *in behalf of*, *by dint of*, *by way of*; *for the sake of, a-breast of, a-board, a-head of, a-cross, be-side*; *in spite of* = *in despite of.* Sometimes we find; *d-spite* = *in despite of me.* Cp the use of *maugre* (Fr malgré) in M E *maugre min, in spite of me, maugre thaires* = *in spite of them.*

(4) ADJECTIVE PREPOSITIONS

E-re (O.E. *ær-r*, M E *er, ar, or*), *before*. See § 116. p 95

Or, the M.E form or = ar = *ere* occurs in the authorised version of the Bible. See *Ps.* xc 2 , *Prov.* viii 23.

Or ere (= *or* ♦ = *er er*), is a mere reduplicat on, like *an if* See *King John*, iv 3 , *Tempest*, i. 2 ,

Hamlet, 1 *2*.   It seems to have acquired the sense of *ere ever*.   See Wright's *Bible Word Book*, p. 353.

Till (O E. *til* good, O N. *til* to).   In M E we find **till** used as a sign of the infinitive ; it formed numerous compounds as *intil* = *into*, &c.

Along (O E. *and-lang*, E E *an-lang*, M.E. *ende-long*, *endelonges*).

We sometimes find **alongst** (= *alonges*).

> " *Alongst* the lee shore "
> WEBSTER, *Northward Ho*

" To lie *along*," = to lie at full length.

There is another **along** (O E *ge lang*), in the phrase "*along* of," " *long* of," = *on account of*.

> " *On* hire is al mi lif *ilong* "
> O E *Misc* p 158
> " But if it is *along* on me "
> GOWER, *Spec E Eng* xx 55
> " And that is *long* of contrarie causes "
> HOLLAND, *Pliny*, p 25
> " All *long* of this vile traitor Somerset "
> 1 *Hen VI* iv 3
> " And this is *long* of her "
> FORD.

A-mid, a-midst (O E *on-mydd-um;* M E. *a-muddes*, *a-mudde*, *in-middes*), contains the preposition **a** (on) and the adjective mid in *middle*, *mid-most*, &c.

Other prepositions of this kind are, *a-round*, *a-slant*, &c , *an-ent*, respecting = O E. *on-efn*, *on-emn*, near, toward = E E *on-efen-t* = M.E *anentes*, *anence* , *a-thwart* = acro-s , (O E *on thwork* Cp *thwworh* = perverse ; Icel *thvert*, the acc neut. of *thverr*, across, transverse) , *be-low*, *be-twixt* (O E *be-twox*) from *two* , *be-tween* (O E *be-twoon-um*) from *twain*.

Since (O E. *sith-than*; E E. *sith-then*, *sith-the* M.E. *sithenes*, *sith*, *sin*, *sins*), from *sith* = *late*, O.E. *si-thor later*; cp *since when*.

O.E. *sith-than* = *later than, after that.*

(5) VERBAL PREPOSITIONS.

These are new forms that have arisen out of the participial (dative) construction: *owing to, notwith-standing, out-taken*, (replaced by *except*)

We have numerous participial forms of Romanic origin, as, *according to, concerning, during, except, re-specting, saving, touching.*

Save = M E *sauf, except.* See Chaucer, *Knightes Tale*, l. 2182.

Sans (Fr.) = *sine* (Lat) has gone out of use. It was occasionally employed by Shakespeare.

CHAPTER XIII.

Conjunctions.

232. Prepositions join *words*, one of which is *subordinate* to the other. Conjunctions join *sentences*, and *co-ordinate* terms. Conjunctions are of comparatively late growth, and have sprung from other parts of speech, especially from pronouns, adverbs, and prepositions.

(1) **Pronominal.**—Yet (O.E. *gy-t*), if (O.E. *gif*, M.E. *yt-f*, *ef*, *if*), **yea** (O.E. *gea*), **an-d**

With *and* is connected the archaic conjunction **an** = *if*.

And is very often written for *an* by older writers.

" ,·, { v·; ; ';·,·· ··· '·'··· ·· '·'· ; ; ····· ·· ··· ··· ··· ··· ; ··,· ; ··· ···· "
· · · ' · ,   ,   3

"I pray thee, Launce, *and if* thou seest my boy,
Bid him make haste "

Two Gentlemen of Verona, iii. 1.

We occasionally find *but and if* = *but if*; M E *but-if* = *unless*.

We have lost the O E **ge—ge**, **both—and** ; **ac**, **but** ; **ne—ne**, *neither—nor* , **swa—swa**, **as** *well—as* ; **oththe—oththe**, *either—or* , **sam—sam**, **the—the**, *whether—or* ; **the** or **thy**; and **for-thy** , **for-tham**(than)-the, **be-tham-the** = *for that that*, *by that that*, *because* ; **nu—nu** = *now—now*.

For-why is *scarce* now   It occurs in the Psalms (Prayer Book).

Either—or; neither—nor; or—or, nor—nor, have the same origin as the indefinite pronouns, *either* and *neither.* See § 168, p 127.

Or is a corruption of *either* (O E *áwther, áther*) and *nor* of *nether* (O E. *náither*)   In M E. we find *other—other = either* κ *nother—nother = neither—nor*

     " Put not thy fyngerys in thy dysche,
      Nothyr in flesche *nothir* in fysche "
                       Babees Book, p 18
     " As trewe as steel *ether* stoon "
                        Ib p 40

See Luke vi 42

El-se, the genitive of **el** (= *other*), is often supplied by *otherwise.*

So gives rise to *also, as,* and *whereas,* the is the root of *though,* (O E. theá-h) *although, then, then, that,* &c.

The stem of **who** occurs in *what—and* (M E *what—what = both* , *and*), *whether, whence,* &c

(2) **Adverbial** (from nouns) —**Lskewise.** (= in *likewise*), *sometimes, at times, whilst, otherwhiles, besides, be-cause, on the contrary, in order that,* &c

To the end that (Ex vii 22) = O E *tó* tham *thet = to that that.*

In O E. *hwíl-um—hwíl-um*, *hwíle—hwíle = sometimes—sometimes*

    " *One while* (the moon) bended pointwise into tips of horns, *another whiles* divided just in the half, and *anon* again in a compasse round, spotted *sometime* and darke, and ...

(3) **Adverbial** (from adjectives) —*Both*—*and*,
even, *only*, *now*—*anon*, *furthermore*, *for as much as*,
evermore, *lastly*, *firstly*, *finally*, &c.   *Lest* = O E *thý
læs* the, *lies* the, M E *leste*, *natheles* = O E. *ná thý
læs* = *nevertheless*, *unless* = E.E. *onlesse*.

Not only—*but also* = O E *nalæs that án that*—*ac elc swá*, *as
soon as* = *sóna swá*—*swá*   In M E. we find *na the mo* = *never
the more*

(4) **Prepositional**, many of which have come
in along with the demonstrative *that.*—*Ere*, *after*,
before, *but*, *for*, *since*, *in that*, *with that*, *till* (= *to*),
until (= *unto*).

In O E *óth that* = *until*, E E *a thet*, M E *for-to*, *for-te*,
fort (that), *to that* = *until.*   Sometimes *the while til*, and *while*
itself, do duty for *until*

For has sometimes the sense of *in order to* (see Gen xxxi
18, Ex xvi 27).

(5) **Verbal.**—*Say*, *suppose*, *to talk of*, *considering*,
provided, *were it not*, *how be it*, &c.

CHAPTER XIV

Interjections.

233 Interjections have *no grammatical* relation to other words in a sentence and are not strictly speaking 'parts of speech.' They are either mere exclamations or cries, as, **O!** **ah!** **eigh!** **fy!** or else elliptical expressions, as **good bye** = *god b' wi' ye* = *God be with you*

Zounds = *God's wounds*, **marry** = the *Virgin Mary*, **grammercy** = *great thanks*

Alas, alack, Fr *hélas*, from *las* (sad), Lat. *lassus*

234 Some words (adverbs, verbs). are used as interjections . *how, well, out, hence, begone, look, behold.* Cp *hail! all hail* = O E *wes thu hál* = *hale be thou*, O E. *wes hál* has become *wassail* See *The Blickling Homilies*, ed. Morris, pp 3, 5.

A few primitive interjections have come down to us from the oldest English; **ha, eh** (O E *ea*), **lo, la,** (O E *lá*), **heigh** (*hig*), **wod** ('') E *wá*), **well-a-way,** **well-a-day** (O.E. *wá-lá-wá* = *woe-lo woe*, **what** (O.E. *hwæt*).

CHAPTER XV.

Derivation and Word formation.

235 The primary elements and significant parts of words are called **roots, as** tal in *talk* and *tell; bar,* in *bear, bairn, birth,* &c.

The root is modified (1) by endings called **suffixes** which form **derivatives,** as, *rich-*ly, *nest-*ling; (2) by particles, placed before the root, called **prefixes,** which form **compounds,** as, for-*bid,* un-*true.*

Two words may be placed together to form com-pound words, as, **blackbird.**

SUFFIXES OF TEUTONIC ORIGIN.

FROM DEMONSTRATIVE ROOTS.

236. I. Noun Suffixes.

Some suffixes have sprung from old demonstrative or pro-nominal roots; others are merely altered forms of nouns and adjectives. The origin of the former is very obscure; that of the latter tolerably certain Cp *beauts-*ful, *love-*ly, *glad-*some. &c. See Suffixes of Predicative origin, § 238, p 209 Many words have an old vowel suffix, as, -ale = O.E. *eal-u*, -hue = O.E. *haw-w.*

It must be borne in mind—

(1) That many prefixes and suffixes have no longer a living power, that is, are not now used to form new derivatives, as the prefix *for* in *for*-swear, and the suffix *-m* in *glea*m, &c

(2) That many derivatives were formed from certain ancient roots or stems in the oldest period of our language , as *flight* from *fledg*an, not from the modern *fly*.

-d gives a kind of *passive* signification to words, formed from verbal roots   dee-d from *do* = *that which is done*   Cp. floo-d from *flow*; glee-d (a live coal) from *glow*; see-d from *sow*.

er (O E. *ere*), denoting the agent or doer: bak-er, speak-er, mill-er.

Sometimes we find -ar, -or for -er; begg-ar, schol-ar, sail-or.
Under N Fr. influence i or y has crept in before -er; as, law-y-er, glaz-i-er, cloth-i-er.
-man is added to -er in fish-*er-man*
-t has crept into bragg-*ar-t*, and -d into dast-*ar-d*, loll-*ar-d* (M E. *lollere*).

-est; earn-est, harv-est.

-ing, the ending of verbal nouns, O.E. *-ung*, as, learn-ing, writ-ing, &c.

-ing (O.E *-ing*) forming diminutives : as, farth-ing (from *fourth*), tith-ing (from *tithe* = *tenth*), rid-ing (from *thrid* = *third*).

This suffix occurs in a few nouns without adding a diminutival force to them:—kın-g (O E *cyn-ing*) —shıll-ing, penn-y(O E. *pen*ıg), ...

-l-ing, made up of -l and -ing, forms diminutives: dar-ling (from *dear*), gos-ling, strip-ling, un-ler-ling.

The addition of the suffix *-k* has produced *dear, goose*, and
_____ , _____ ; _____ Cp. *nation* and
_____ , _____ , _____ , _____ .

-k: haw-k, mil-k, yol-k.

-kin (*= -k + -in*) forms diminutives · as, lamb-
kin, lad-kin, fir-kin (from *four*)

It forms patronymics in Daw-kin (from *David*),
Per-kins (from *Peter*).

-le, denoting agent or instrument· as, bead-le,
(from O.E. *beodan, to pray*); bund-le (from *bind*);
steep-le (from *steep*), sett-le (from *seat*), thumb-le
(from *thumb*)

We find this l in angle, apple, bramble, fiddle, saddle,
shambles, fowl, haul, heel, nail, sail, stile, (from *sty, to go up*)

-l, -le (O E *-els*, Ger. *-el*)· as, buri-al, brid-le,
gird-le, ndd-le (from O E *rad-en, to read, interpret,
advise*), skitt-les (from O E *sceót-an, to shoot*), shew-
el (a scarecrow)

-m (O E *-ma, -m* Cp. Lat no-*men*): bar-m (from
bear), bloo-m (from *blow*), doo-m (from *do*)· glea-m
(from *glow*), qual-m (from *quell*), sea-m (from *sew*),
strea-m (from *strew, to scatter, spread*), tea-m (from
tow, tug), stea-m (from *stew*).

It takes the form of -om in bloss-om, bos-om,
fath-om.

-n (of the same origin as the -n in passive par-
ticiples)· bair-n (from *bear*), beac-on (from *beck*),
burd-en (from *bear*), heav-en (from *heave*), maid-en,
mai-n (from *mag, to be great*), wagg-on, wai-n (from
wag).

In chick-en (from cock), the suffix has a dim̃ · form· f. ce;
kitt-en (from *cat*) = M E. ·· *cur*. We also find ·· meaning a
kitten.

-en in vix-en (from *fox*) was once a common sign of the feminine.

-nd (an old present participial ending): err-and, fi-end (from O E. *fi-an*, *to hate*), freo-nd (from *freo-n*, *to love*), wi-nd (from *wa*, *to blow*).

-ness (O E. *-nis*, *-nes*), forming abstract nouns from nouns and adjectives; as, wit-ness, wilder-ness; dark-ness, good-ness, &c.

-ock (O E. *-uca*), forming diminutives and patronymics · as, bull-ock, hill ock; pill-ock (a little *pill*), Poll ock (from *Paul*), Wil-cox, Wil-c-ock (from *Will*).

In the Scotch dialects we find ladd-ock, wif-ock This -ock becomes -ick, or -ie (-y), as, lass-ick, lass-ie. Cp. mamm-y, dadd-y.

-r (instrumental)· fing-er (from *fang*, *to take*) lai-r (from *lie*), stai-r (from *sty*, *to climb*), timb-er (from *. . . . . w-t er 'f-ar . . .' w . ' er '. . . . . .'*
-ster (O ! . . . .
gender: as, spin-ster.
It merely marks the agent in song-ster, huck-ster, malt-ster, young-ster.

Upholsterer or *upholster*, is a corruption of *upholder*.

-s: blis-s (from *blithe*), eave-s. It also appears in *adze*, *axe*.

-th, -t (of the same origin as the d in *seed*, &c). It is used, for the most part, to form abstract nouns from verbs and adjectives: as, dear-th (from *dear*), wid-th (from *wide*), heal-th (from *hale*), leng-th (from *long*), slo-th (from *slow*), dea-th (from *die*), bir-th (from *bear*), ear-th (from *ear*, *to plough*)

Drough-t₂(from *dry*, O E. *drig*) : heigh-t (from *high*), len-ten (from *long*).

Dnf-t (from *drive*). fligh-t (from *fly*, O E. *flēogan*), . f t *(fleoge)* . : .. t *t'* . ı *m. ŋ.*. O F *n* .). slaugh-t ı: .ıı ı:. .ı:. O I . . ı .ı.ı . . ıt .ı ı .ı . ı ., O L. .ıı ı ıı.ı .ıı ı.: .ı .. t . ıım *drıca* or *ıı.ıc.* O E. *dragan*), fros-t, beques-t.

The suffix t for th ıs due to the sharp sounds f, gh (orıgın╌lly h), s.   In O E. th was always sounded flat, as ın *thıra*.

-ther, -ter, marking the agent : bro-ther, fa-ther mo-ther, daugh-ter, sıs-ter, fos-ter (from *food*).

-ther, -ter, -der, marking the instrument; bla-dder, (from *blow*), fea-ther (from root *fat*, *to fly*), wea-ther (from *wa*, *to blow*), fo-dder (from *fa*, *to feed*), la-dder (from root *hli*, *to climb*), mur-der (from *mar*, *to kill*).   Ru-dder (from *row*), laugh-ter.

-y (O.E. -ig, -h) : bod-y, hon-ey.   It has become -ow ın holl-ow, sall-ow, marr-ow, &c.

-ow also arıses out of (1) O E *-u* —mall-ow, mead-ow, shad-ow   (2) O E *ewe* —swallow

237. II. Adjective Suffixes.

-d (like the *d* in *dee-d*, &c) : bol-d, col-d, lou-d, love-d, feathere-d, foote-d, &c.   See p 205.

-ish (O.E -ısc) forms patronymics, as, Eng-lish, Wel-sh, Ir-ish.   It sıgnifies *some-what*, *rather*, in green-ish, whıt-ish, &c. ; it marks contempt and de-preciatıon, in book-ish, outland-ish, hogg-ish.

-le, -l (O.E. *el*, *-ol*) · brıtt-le (from O E *bryttan*, to break), id-le, lıtt-le (O.E. *lyt*, few), fıck-le, gr∍pp-le (graspıng, greedy), new-fang-le d (= taken up with

new things, (from O.E *fangan*, to take), suck-le (un-steady), forget-ful = M E. for-get-el (O.E. for-*gut-ol*).

-en, *made of*. It originally signified *of* or *be-longing to* : as, flax-en, gold-en, wood-en, &c.

There was once a very large number of adjectives in -en : as, ashen, oaken, glassen, &c. The extensive use that could be once made of this suffix may be seen from the following passage —

" God h m rol a th m lnd th r...
 1   .   ,
 W,, ..   .
With *firen* piler apon the night "—*Cursor Mundi*, G ll
Clouden piler = pillar of cloud.   [6195-6.
Firen piler = pillar of fire.

-en (participial)   bound-en, molt-en, &c

-r, -er (O E. -or, -er, -r): butt-er from *bute*, slipp-er-y ; cp. M E. slid-er (slippery), lith-er (bad), wak-er (watchful), flicker = flik-er (= fickle, flickering)

-er and -n are combined in east-er-n, north-er-n, south-er-n, west-er-n.

-t: brigh-t, lef-t, ligh-t, righ-t, swif-t. See -t, p 207.

th: fif-th, six-th, seven-th.

-y (O E. -*ig*) an-y, blood-y, clay-ey, craft-y, dirt-y, &c., sill-y (O.E *sæl-ig*).

-ow arises out of an older -u —call-ow, fall-ow, narr-ow, yell-ow

238. II. Suffixes from Predicative Roots.

(1) Nouns.

-craft (O.E. *cræft*) : priest-craft, witch-craft, wood-craft.

-kind (O.E. *cyn*) = kin : man-kin-d, woman-kin-d.

P

In E E and M E we find fowl *kin*, worm-*kin*, &c. In M E. kin, instead of being used after the noun, was put between the *numeral* and *noun*, hence it is mostly found in the genitive case.

> " *Mones cunnes vfel* "
> = Evil of *many a kind*
> " *For nones kunnes* mede "
> = For meed of *no kind*
> " *Alles kunnes* bokes "
> = Books of *every kind*.

In M E we find *alskyns*, *noskyns*, *no skynnes*, *naken*, *vhat-kin* Cp Dan *alskens*, "*of* every sort"

The phrase *no kin* became also *no kind of*, and no manner, *no manner of*, &c Cp. the following from the *Cursor Mundi* —

> " Of *nankines* worm euer is made "—G l. 1961?
> " O *nakin* worm þat es made "—G l 1961
> " Of *no maner* worm þat is made "—T l. 1961

-dom = *doom* (O E. *dóm*, Ger. *thum*) thral-**dom**, wis-**dom**, cristen-**dom**, hali-**dom** (and halidame = O E. *hálig-dom*, E E *halidóm*, sanctuary, relic), king-**dom** (from O E *cyne*, royal)

In E E *kine* is a very common prefix, *kine-ʒerde* = royal-rod, sceptre, *kine-helm* = crown, *kine-ríce* = realm, *kine-setle* = royal settle, throne

-fare (O E. *faru*, way, *faran*, to go), way, course · thorough-**fare**, wel-**fare**, chaf-**fer** (= chap-*fare* from *cheap*)

-head, -hood (O.E. *hád*, state, rank, person; M E *-hed, -hod*, Ger *-heit*).

God-**head**, man-**hood** (M E. man-*hede*, man-*hode*); hive-li-**hood** once signified liveliness, but it now represents the O E *líf-láde*, E.E. *líf-lode*, M.E. *l/we-lode* (life-leading), sustenance.

-herd (O E *hyrde*, pastor, keeper, herdsman):

shep-**herd**, swine-**herd**. Cp. goose-**herd** (Holins-hed), hog-**herd** (Harrison).

-**lock**, -**ledge** (O E. *lāc*, gift, sport), wed-**lock**, know-**ledge** (M. E know-*leche*, know-*lache*, know-*lage*).

O E bryd-*lac* = marriage, reaf-*lac*, bereaving, spoil The Icelandic -*leikr* (= O E -*lac*) is very common under the forms *-lī . . . ·.'., . T ,. . 'V T . ,. .* * *', . ., . ` , . ` .·*
ʷ·.·. *· ` .· .·. . ., . ` , . ` .·ₑ*
ready, polite)

-**man** often does duty for the O E -**ere** Cp. ship-**man**, chap-**man**, dust-**man**, bell-**man**, work-**man** (O.E wyrht-a)

M E *fisherē* = fish-er-man Cp speaker and spoke-s-man (= M E speke-*man*) The s is an intruder in craft-s-man, hunt-s-man, hu-d-s-man Wife sometimes takes the place of -**ster** Cp brew-*wif* (in Piers Plowman) for brewestere, fish-wife = fish-woman, mid-wife, hussy = house-wife, goody = good-wife

-**lock**, -**lick** (O E -*leac*, -*lic*, plant) gar-**lick** (spear plant) hem-**lock**, bar-ley (O E. *ber-lic*, from *bere* barley).

-**red** (O.E. rēden = mode, fashion, condition; Ger -*rath*) hat-**red**, kin-d-**red**.

-**rick** (O E *rīce*, power, dominion). bishop-**rick**. Cp M E hevene-*rīcie*, king-*riche* (= E E kine-*riche*), realm

-**ship**, -**skip**, -**scape** (O.E. *scape*, Icel -*skapr* = form, shape)· friend-**ship**, lord-**ship**, wor-**ship** (= *worth-ship*), land-**scape** (land-**skip**) is a modern formation.

Fairfax, in his *Bulk and Selvage of the World*, coins *starmscope* for *atmosphere*.

-stead (O.E. *stede*, place, *stead*, from *stand*), bed-stead ; sun-stead = sol-stice

-tree (O E *treow*, tree, wood), axle-tree ; M E. dore-*tre* (door-post), rode-*tre* (rood-tree, cross)

-wright (O E *wyrhta*, E E. *wrihte*, a workman · from *work* cp. *wrought*), ship-wright, wheel-wright.

In E E we find *psalm-wurhte*, *psalm-wrihte* = psalm-*wright*, or the O E *psalm-scop* = psalm shaper, psalmist. Becon uses *psalm-o-graph* for psalmist !

E E *bred-wrigte* = bread-wright = baker

-ward (O E *weard*, warder, keeper), ape-ward, bear-ward, hay-ward.

(2) ADJECTIVES.

-fast (O.E. -*fæst*, firm, *fast*) sted-fast, shame-faced (= shame *fast*) root-fast.

-fold (O.E. -*feald*). two-fold, mani-fold.

-ful (O E -*ful*). aw-ful, bale-ful, hate-ful, need-ful.

-less (O E. -*leás* = loose): fear-less, god-less.

-ly, -like (O E -*líc*, *líc*, Ger. *leich*, body): god-ly, like-ly, man-ly, dove-like, war-like. See § 225, p 190

"'Tis as man*like* to bear extremities as god*like* to forgive "
                                              FORD

-right (O E. -*riht*) · up-right, down-right.

In M E *upright* = supine , *downright* = perpendicular

-some (O E. -*sum*, Ger. -*sam*) is another form of same : dark-some, hard-some, irk-some : buxom

= *bugh-som* = bending some, pliant, obedient, from
bow (O E. *bugan* to bend) **lissom** = *lithe-some*
teen, ty = **ten**. See numerals § 118, p 98.
-ward (O E. *-weard*, becoming, leading to. Cp.
O E *weorth-an*, to become, Lat. *versus*, from *vertere*,
to turn) back-**ward**, for-**ward**, fro-**ward**, to-**ward**,
unto-**ward**.

-wise (O E *wis*, way, mode) · right-**wise** (O E.
riht-wis = right-wise. Cp. M E *tale-wise* = tell-
tale, tale-bearing

     " For Godd es ever on *riȝht-wis* side,
     Werrand [warring] again *wrang-wis* pride "
                              C Mundi, G. ll 7547, 7548

   -worth (O E. *-weorth*, E E. *-wurthe*) stal-**worth**,
dear-**worth** (precious)

   In E E we find *lune-wurthe* (love-worthy), *kine-wurthe* (royal)

239 IV. Adverbial Suffixes.

   The demonstrative suffixes -s, -m, -nce, have
already been treated of under **adverbs**, §§ 224, 226,
pp 187, 188, 191
   The following are of predicative origin :—
   -ly (O E. *-lice*) · bad-**ly**, on-**ly**, lone-**ly** (= *al-one-
l*)), utter-**ly**, willing-**ly**   See **-ly**, p 212
   -ling, -long (O.E· *-lunga, -linga*) · head-**long**, flat-
ling, dark-**ling**, side-**ling** side-**long**.

   In M E we find the genitive form -lynges (linges) in *grof-
lynges* = groveling (prone), *hedlinges* = headlong
         " I'll run headlongs by and by "
                              WEBSTER, *Northward Ho*
         " Hurlet (hurl'd) hym doun *hedlynges*."
                              The Gest Hystoriale, l 7485
   Nose linges, naselynge, noslynges (supine, with the nose up-
ward), *handlinges* (hard to hand)

-meal (O E. -mǣlum, from mǣl, division, meal):
limb-meal, piece-meal, flock-meal.

-ward, -wards: hither-ward, down-wards, up-
wards. See p. 213.

-wise (see p. 213): other-wise, no-wise, like-
wise.

In M E. we find "in other wise," "in no wise," "in like
wise," "in the same wise," "in what wise."

-way, -ways: al-way, al-ways, straight-way,
straight-ways.

-Gate or gates = gat, way, is a suffix in M E.

Thus -gate, other -gates, so-gate

240. V. Verbal Suffixes.

-k (frequentative or intensitive): har-k (from hear),
tal-k (from tell), stal-k (from steal).

-l, -le (frequentative) dribb-le (from drip), dribb-le
(from drip), dazz-le (from daze), grapp-le (from grasp),
dwind-le (from dwine), knee-l, spark-le, start-le.

-n (causative). hast-en, strength-en, fatt-en, short-
en, &c.

This suffix had once a reflexive or passive signification. Cp
learn from M E. leren

-r (frequentative or intensitive). ling-er, (O.E.
leng-an, to delay), flitt-er, glitt-er, glimm-er, welt-er.

Stagger = M E stakeren. ₁For change of consonant before
the suffix, cp dribb-le from drip, &c.

s: ble-ss (O.E. blēt-s-s-an, from blot, sacrifice),
clean-se, tru-s-t, cla-s-p (from clap), gra-s-p, (from
grap), li-s-p (from lip).

Rinse = Fr rincer (= rins-er, from a root found in Goth,
hrain-jan, to cleanse , hrains, pure, clean Ger rein, pure.)

241. COMPOSITION.

Two or more words joined together to make a single term, expressing a new notion, are called **Compounds**: as, *black-bird, rail-road, rain-bow,* &c

The accent distinguishes a compound word from the mere collocation of two terms, as *blackbird* and *black bird.* The hyphen is used to denote a compound, as, *passer-by, man-of-war, coast-line,* &c.

Notice the shortening of the long vowel in compounds, as, *breakfast, shepherd; vineyard* (= M E. *wyn̄yard*).

Compound words form **nouns, adjectives, verbs,** and **adverbs.**

I. Noun-Compounds.

Noun and noun :—

Noontide, churchyard, oaktree, doomsday, kinsman, herdsman, man-killer, &c.

There are many similar old compounds whose elements are so fused together that we do not recognize them at first sight.
Bridal = bride-ale
Bandog = band-dog, Holinshed has *band-dog* or *tie-dog.*
Gospel = *god-spell* = good-word
Nostril = *nose-thrill* = nose-hole (O E. *thyrel* = hole).
Orchard = *wort-* (herb) *yard* (garden), O E *ort-g̃ard.*
Nightingale = night singer (O E *nihte-gale*).
Hand-y-work = O.E. *hand̃geweorc,* hand work [1]
Cp. everywhere = E.E. *ever-ihwer* = O E *æfre + gehwaar.*

2. Substantive and adjective :—

Alderman, freeman, blackbird, midnight, upperhand,

(M.E. *over-hand*), *fore-thought*, *neighbour* = O.E. *neáh-bur* = nigh dweller, *twilight, fortnight*, &c.

3 Substantive and pronoun :—

Self-will, self-esteem, self-sacrifice.

(4) Substantive and verb :—

Bakehouse, pickpocket, telltale, spendthrift, godsend, windfall.

II. Adjective-Compounds.

1. Substantive and Adjective :—

Blood-red, snow-white, sea-sick, heart-sick, fire-proof, praise-worthy.

2. Adjective and substantive :—

Bare-foot, bare-foot-ed. Cp. O.E *clǽn-heort* = *having a clean heart*, *án-eage* = *one-eye d, four-footed*, &c.

3. Adjective and adjective :—

Fool-hardy (fool = foolish). Cp. *mad-hardy, blue-green, rathe-ripe.*

4 Participial combinations :—

(a) Noun and pres part : *earth-shaking, heart-rending, match-making.*

(b) Adjective and pres. part. : *ill-looking, time-serving.*

(c) Noun and pass. part : *earth-born, chap-fallen, heart-broken, thunder-struck.*

(d) Adjective and pass. part. : *new-made, well-bred, dead-drunk*, &c.

III. Verb-Compounds.

1. Noun and verb: *backbite, hoodwink, henpeck, waylay.*

2. Adjective and verb: *dry-nurse, white-wash*

- 3. Verb and adverb *doff* = do off, *don* = do on
(p *cross-question.*

For compound adverbs, see § 228, p 193, 194.

242 COMPOSITION WITH PARTICLES OF ENGLISH ORIGIN.

I. Inseparable Particles.

a- (O E. *on,* E E *an*) on · a back, a-bed, a-board, aboo, a bey nt a ba, a b a a, b b a a, a n n a i A·

1 The original form occurs in an-on (*in one* moment) an-ent (see p 188), a-c-knowledge (O E *oncnáwan*), an-vil (O E an-filt)

2 A- (O E *of,* off, from) a-down = O E *of dûne,* from

perceive

Of t

= d g, ut C, y , P, se, n (Se·· /,) r R, 1 6 , ad (x 1 4 : r

— 3. A- (O E. *â-,* Goth *us-* = out of, from), a-rise, a-rouse, 2-f-frighted, a-wake, a-light ; a-go = passed by.

"All this world schal *a-go.*"
O E Misc p 160.

We have a prefix a- in a-ghast, a-shamed, a-feard, a frighted, but it is difficult to say whether its original meaning was *out of* (O E. a- = Goth us-), or *from* (O E. *of*).

4. A- (O.E. *and-* Ger *ent-*, back). A-long (O E. *and-lang*, M E *ende-long*, E.E. *an-long*, M E *on-long*)   An-swer (O E *and sxarван*), en-lighten (O E *onlyhtan*).

A bide (O E *an-bīdan, on-bīdan, and bīdan*).

A-gain, a gainst (O E *on-gean*, Ger *ent-gegen*).

Cp e-lope (Du. *ont-loopen*, Ger. *ent-laufen*).

5. A- (O.E. *ge-*), a-ware (O E *ge-wær*, M E *i-war*), a-like (O E *ge-līc*, ME *ı-lıch, e-lıche, a-lıche, o-lıke*).

A˙ ·ı ˙, ˙,ˌ 'O˙ T˙ ˌ ·ʹ ·ˌ ˌ T˙ ʹ· ˙˙ h N˙ T˙ ʹ a˙ ˌʹ,˙

A m ˙ ˌ˙ ·ˌ I ˌ ·ʹ m ·ˌ ʹ, ˌ· ˌ· ˌ I I ˙ ı·ʹˌ,, M E *o-mang, a-mong*).

A·ʹ· ˌˌ˙ ˌ˙ ˌ· M˙ı ʹ·· ˌ˙ ˌ˙ ˌ· ˌ· ˌ ʹ·ˌ ˌ˙·ˌ ·ˌ˙ ·˙ ʹ O T

·ˌˌ˙ ˙ˌ I ˙ m ˙· ı ˙ ʹ· A· ˌ˙ ·˙ ˌ˙ ˌ˙   ˌ˙   ˌˌ˙

\ · ˌ· ˙ ˌˌ ˙ ˌ · ʹˌ a M I ˙ ˌ · I I ˌ· ˌ˙ ˌ·

(·ı ˌ˙ ˌ·

A ˙ ʹ ı˙ˌ˙ ˌ ˌ I I ı˙,·ʹ m, M I˙· a˙ˌ˙· ˌˌ˙

from *forth*).

6   A- (O.E. *ǽ* ever): a-ught, e-ı-ther.

at- (O.E. *æt-*): at-one, at-onement, t-wit (O.E. *æt-wītan*, to reproach).

The preposition *at* is used as a sign of the infinitive in M E. *At do* has become corrupted into a-do , we find also *to-do* (= *a-do*) used as a substantive.

> " Ware we neuer wont *a* stele."
>> *Cursor Mundi*, T. l 4910.

> " For ware we neuer wont *at* stele."—*Ib.* C.

be- (O.E. *be-, bī-* = *by̌*).   See Adverbs, p. 188.

(1) It renders intransitive verbs transitive, as be-queath, be-speak. be-think.

(2) It is intensitive in be-daub, be-smear, &c   ~~We~~ find this use of the prefix very common in M.E., as be-bleed, be-drive, be-bark, &c.

(3) With substantives it forms verbs, be-friend, be-troth, and a few others of recent origin.

(4) It enters into the composition of *nouns*, as be-half, be-hest, be-hoof, be-quest, by-name, by-path, by-word, &c.; and of *prepositions* and *adverbs*, as be-fore, be-sides, b-ut, &c Bye-law probably contains the Scandinavian " by," *a town.*

Be-head = O E *heafdian,* E E *bi-heaueden, to decapitate.*
Be-lieve = O E *ge-lyfan,* M E *beleuen.*
Be-reave = O E *reafian,* E E *bireauen.*
Be-gin = O E *on-ginnan,* E E *bi-ginnen*
Be-wray is a corruption of the O E *on-wreon, to discover ;*
O.E *be-wreon,* signified *to cover ,* the be is perhaps due to the
M E *bi-traien, to betray*
In be-ware we have the verb be (imper) and the adjective
ware (= cautious)

for- (O.E. *for-*). The original meaning of this prefix was *through, thorough,* like Lat. *per* for-swear (Lat *per-jurare*), for-bid, for-bear, for-get, for-give, for-lorn, fore-go (= for-go). The p p. fore-gone is rare

For-*do* occurs also in the place of the modern *do for.* Cp.
Lat. *per-dere.* Spenser has for-pined, for-wasted, for-wearied
We sometimes find *for* joined to Romance roots, as, for fend
= *defend, forbid,* for-bayred, barred up, *debarred*
From the sense of *overmuch* comes that of *amiss, badly,* in
fore-speak, fore-spent.

fore- (O.E. *fore,* Lat. *præ,* before) : fore-bode, fore-cast, fore-tell, fore-said, fore-father, fore-noon, fore-sight, fore-head.

fore-gone, the p p. of fore-go (rarely used), *to go before,*
must be distinguished from fore-go (= for-go), and fore gone
(= for-gone).

gain- (O E *gegn, gæn*) = against. Cp. *a-gain.*
Gain-say, gain-stand, gain-strive, gain-giving.

Cp M E. *gain-come* = return, *gain-sawe* = contradiction ;
again was once used as a prefix Cp M E *ayen-bite* = remorse,
ayen-byggen = redeem, *ayen-wnst* = counterpoise

1-, y- (O.E. *ge-*, M E *i*)   This prefix was once a
sign of the pass part. as, y-clept, y-channed (Milton)
It is wrongly used in y-pointing (Milton, *On Shake-
speare*). It enters into the composition of i wis (O E
ge-wis, truly, certainly), every-where, hand-y work

mis- (O E *mis-*), wrong, ill Cp a-mis (= on
the wrong, M.E. *misse* wrong, injury) mis-
behave, mis-deed, mis lead, mis-trust, mis-take,
mis-like, (in Shakespeare) has become dis-like.

For mis- in *mischief*, see p. 243

nether-, (O E *ni-ther*) = down, below : nether-
stocks, nether-lands

sand- (O E *sám*, half) sand-blind = half-blind.

"Wrinkled, *sand-blind*, toothless, and deformed "—Burton.

     "   Wrinkled, *sand-blind*, toothless, and deformed "
lanc   l e
(*Piers Plowman*, C. Text, ix. 311, p 155)

to- (O E. *to-*). This is an adverbial form of *two*
(cp Lat *dis-*) signifying *asunder*, *in pieces*: O.E. *to-
brecan* = to break to pieces, *to-dælan* = to divide,
L.E. *to don*, to do asunder ; *to-fleon*, to fly asunder ;
M E *to-pullen*, to pull to pieces, &c.

It sometimes has an intensitive force, and is
strengthened by the adverb all (qute).

     "And all *to*- brake his skull "
               Judges ix 5, 3
     "Al is *to*- broken thilke region "
               Chaucer, *Knightes Tale*, l. 2759.

Go to (used as an interjection in *Hamlet* ι 3) seems to corre-spond to *to-go* = O.E. *to-gân*, to go away, depart, cp *for-do* and *do-for*.

For the phrase *"all to,"* see all, § 243.

to- is the ordinary preposition "to" in to-day, to-night, to-morrow, **to**-gether, here-to-fore, to-ward.

un- (O.E. *on-*, Goth. *and-*, Ger. *ent-*) = back (with verbs): un-bind, un-do, un-fold, un-lock, un-wind.

un- (Q.E. *un-*) = not (with adjectives, and nouns formed from adjectives): un-true, un-wise, un-told, un just, un truth.

wan- (O E *wan*) wan-ing, want-ing . **wan**-hope = despair; **wan**-ton = *wan toven*, untrained, wild ; *-toven* is the O.E *togen*, p p. of the O E verb *te on*, lead, draw. Cp Ger *un-ge-zogen*.

with- (O E. *with-*, a shortened form of *wi-ther*), against, back. **with**-draw, **with**-hold, **with**-stand.

243. II Separable Particles.

Af·ter (O E. *after*): after-growth, after-math, after-clap, after-dinner, after-ward

All (O.E. *eal*): al-mighty, al-one, 1-one, 1-onely, 1-onesome, al-together, al-most, al-though, al-so, a-s

All, meaning *quite*, is very often joined to the adverb *to* (too), and was made to precede the prefix *to-* in composition (See to-. p 220)

> "*All to* dirtied"—LATIMER.
> "*Au to* ruffled "—MILTON.
> M E "*Al to* longe "
> > *Lyf of Beket*, 774.
> E.E. *Al to* wel "
> > *Juliana*, p. 50.

Forth (O E. *forth*)· forth-coming, forth-going for-ward (O E. forth-weard)

"From that day *forthward* man most nedes dele."—*Trevisa.*

Cp E.E *forth-fare* = departure, *forth-gong* = progress, &c

Fro, from (O E. *fram*, O.N. *fra*): fro-ward, from-ward.

In (O E. *in*) in-come, in-land, in-sight, in-born, in-bred, in-wardly, in-ly, in lay, in-fold, in-to.

In many verbs *in* has been replaced by a Romance form (en-, em-): en-dear, em-bitter.

Of (O E. *of* = from, *off*)· of-fal, off set, off-shoot, off-spring. See a-, pp. 217-8

In M E we find *of-schrēden*, shred off , *of-smiten*, smite off ; E.E. *of-springen*, to spring from

On (O E. *on*, upon, forward). on-set, on-slaught, on-ward.

Out, ut (O E *ūt*): out-come, out-let, out-break, out-pour, out-cast, out-joint, out-law, out-landish, out-side, out-ward, ut ter. It sometimes signifies *beyond, over*, as in out-bid, out-do

Over (O.E. *ofer*) above, beyond, exceedingly, too :—

(1) With nouns and adjectives : over-eating, over-flow, over-plus (E E. *over-eke*), over-joy, over-big, over-much.

(2) With verbs over-flow, over-hang, over-run, over-take, over work, over-whelm, over-hear, over-look

Over (O E *ufe-ra*, E E. *uwe-re*, superior; cp a-b *ove*)· over-coat, over-man ; M.E. over-lippe = upper-lip ; *ofer*-hand = upper-hand.

Through, thorough (O E *thurh*, E E. *thuruh*):

thorough-fare (M E *thurgh-fare*), **through-**out,
thorough-bred, **through-**train.

Cp E E *thurgh-*feren (to go through), *thurh-*driven, *thurh-*
seken, *thurh-*wunian (to remain); M.E *thorow-*bore (bore
through), *thorow-*ride, &c.

Under (O E. *under*). **under** go, **under-**stand,
under-lay, **under** mine, **under-**let, **under-**sell, **un-**
der-growth, **under-**ling, **under-**wood, **under-**hand,
under-neath.

Up (O E *up*): up bear, up braid, up hold, **up-**
heave, **up-**lifted, **up-**land, **up-**shot, **up-**right, **up-**
start, **up-**ward, **up-**on.

244. SUFFIXES OF ROMANIC ORIGIN

Under the head of Romanic suffixes we must dis-
tinguish (1) those Latin suffixes that have a Norman
French form, (2) those suffixes that are unchanged,
being borrowed directly from the Latin language,
(3) modern French and other Romance endings of
Latin origin.

Voy-age comes through N. French, its Latin
form is *vi-aticum*. Cp. beni-**son** with benedic-**tion**,
charn-el and carn-al, &c.

Liqu-our has a N. French form; liqu-eur comes to
us from modern French; cp *antic* (N Fr), *antique* Fr
Cavalc-**ade**, escap-**ade**, are Italian words that have
come to us through the French. The true French
forms are *chevauch-ée* and *échapp-ée*, other forms in
-ade (originally **-ado**), come to us directly from the
Spanish language, as crus-**ade**, brav-**ado**, torn-**ado**,
&c.; cp. prem-**ier** (Fr.), prim-**ary** (Lat), prim-er

(N Fr.) Many suffixes of Norman French origin have now no living power, not being used to form new derivatives

I. Noun Suffixes.

-age (Lat. *-aticum*), forms abstract nouns : advant-*age*, bever-*age*, cour-*age*, hom-*age*.

It sometimes denotes the place where, as in hermit-*age*, parson-*age*

Till-*age* and cott-*age* are hybrids.

-ain, -an, -en, -on (Lat. *-anus*) : chapl-*ain*, chief-*ain*, vill-*ain*, pelic-*an*, peas-*ant*, ward-*en* (= guard-*an*), sext-*on* (= sacrist-*an*), surge-*on*, sover-*eign*

Modern formations, having no corresponding Latin form in *-anus*, are antiquari-*an*, barbari-*an*, civili-*an*, grammari-*an*, librari-*an*, &c.

From modern French come artis-*an*, courtes-*an*, partis-*an*

-ain (Lat *-aneus*), appears in -mount-*ain*, camp-*aign*, champ-*aign*.

-al, -el (Lat. *-alis*) can-*al*, cardin-*al*, cathedr-*al*, coron-*al*, spitt-*al*, chann-*el*, catt-*le*, chatt-*el*, fu-*el*, jew-*el*, &c.

Lat. *-alia* (pl.) appears in batt-*le*, entr-*ail*, marv-*el*, rasc-*al*, spous-*als*, victu-*als*

-ant, -ent (Lat *-antem*, *-entem*) are participial suffixes, sometimes marking the agent : —

Coven-*ant*, gi-*ant*, merch-*ant*, serge-*ant*, brig-*and*, diam-*ond*, innoc-*ent*, stud-*ent*.

-ance, -ence (Lat. *-antia*), form abstract nouns : —

Abund-*ance*, allegi-*ance*, ch-*ance* (= cad-*ence*), pur-vey-*ance* (= provid-*ence*), obeis-*ance* (obedi-*ence*), prud-*ence*, sci-*ence*, &c.

-ancy, -ency, are new formations from the Latin
-antia, -entia, becoming (1) -antie, -entie, (2) -ancie,
-encie, &c., brilli-ancy, excell-ency, &c.

sé-ance is from modern French.

-and, -end (Lat. -andus, -endus), are gerundial
suffixes :—

(1) Garl-and, vi-and, leg-end, prov-end-er.

./?) Memor-andum retains its Latin form ; (3) preb-end, reprim-
and, are directly from Modern French

-ar, -er, -or (Lat. -arium), marks the place
where; it enters into the name of some common
objects :—

(1) Cell-ar, mort-ar, chart-er, dow-er, sampl-er,
garn-er, lard-er, sauc-er, man-or.

(2) -ary (Lat. -arium), gran-ary, (= garn-er), avi-
ary, semin-ary, viv-ary.

In M E. we find O Fr. -aire in sal-arie, seyntu-arie (sanctuary),
lettu-arie = electuary.

(1) -ar, -er, -or (Lat. -arius), marks the agent :
calend-ar, vic-ar, arch-er, butch-er, butl-er, carpent-
er, farri-er, messeng-er, treasur-er, bachel-or, chan-
cell-or, coun-sell-or.

(2) -ary (Lat. -arius) advers-ary, secret-ary, &c.

Commiss-arie = commissary, not-arie = not-ary, are met with
in M.E. and the suffix is owing to the O Fr -aire, not -arie
See -ry, p 230.

-ard (Low Lat. -ardus, Ger. -hart, Eng. hard) ·
cow-ard, dull-ard, nigg-ard, buzz-ard, tank-ard, &c.

R., , . ., ... , ... , ...

. . . .

. . . . it p
Ger. heb-hart).

Q

-ate (N. Fr. -at, Lat. -atus, pass. part.) cur-ate, leg-ate, reneg-ate.

Most nouns in -ate are of recent origin ; -ade is the Spanish form of -ate Cp reneg-ade = reneg-ate. Advocate has replaced M E avocat, Fr. avocat

-ee (Fr. -ée, Lat -atus, suffix of pass. part), marks the agent in a passive sense.

Appell-ee, legat-ee, trust-ee, &c , are from Modern French.

-eer, -ier (Fr. -er, -ier, Lat. -arius): engin-eer, mountain-eer, harpoon-er, brigad-ier, prem-ier, chandel-ier, are from Modern French. See -ar, -er, p 225, for the N. French form.

-el (Lat. -ela). cant-el, cand-le, quarr-el, tut-el-age.

-el (Lat. -ellus, -ellum). bush-el, bow-el, chanc-el, mors-el, cast-le, mant-el, pann-el, pomm-el.

-en, -in (Lat. -enus, -ena, -enum). ali-en, warr-en, flor-in, cha-in, verm-in, ven-om.

-er (Lat. -eria) : gart-er, gutt-er, matt-er, pray-er.

Barrier is the Modern-French barr-ière See -ry, p. 230

Coupled with a diminutive force ∙ cock-erel, dott-erel, mack-erel, pick-erel ; T.E. daint-rel = a dain-ty.

-ern (Lat -erna). cav-ern, cist-ern, tav-ern (cp. tab ern-acle).

-et, -ot (N Fr. -et, -ot, Fr. -et, -ette, -at, -ot), is a diminutive suffix.

Blank-et, cygn-et, hatch-et, pock-et, tick-et, chari-ot, fagg-ot, parr-ot.

-et, -ot, -ette (see above): ball-et, ball-ot, bill-et, paroqu-et, ettiqu-ette, coqu-ette, from Modern French.

To the original -et has been prefixed l (for el),

making a new diminutive suffix, -let ïn ham-*let*, stream-*let*, &c. See -el, p 226.

-ess (Lat. -*issa*), sign of the feminine gender. See p. 66, § 85.

ess, -ice, -ise (Lat. -*itta*). distr-*ess*, larg-*ess*, lach-*ess*, rich-*ess*, prow-*ess*, franch-*ise*, merchand-*ise*, avar-*ice*, coward-*ice*, just-*ice*, M.E. covet-*eise* has become covet-ous-*ness*.

Serv-*ice* = Lat. serv-*itium* ; burg-*ess* = O.F *burgeis*, court-*eous* (= M.E curt-*eis*), and marq-*uis* contain Latin -*ensis*.

-ice, -ise (Lat. -*icem*) : ñiatr-*ice*, pum-*ice*, pent-*house* (= pent-*ise*), jud-*ge*, partrid-*ge*, paun-*ch*.

-ice, (Lat. -*icius*) : apprent-*ice*, nov-*ice*, surpl-*ice*, pil-*ch* (= pel-*isse*).

-ic, -c (Lat. -*icus*, -*ica*, Gr. ικός)· log-*ic*, mus-*ic*, phys-*ic*, heret-*ic*, cler-*k* (= cler-*ic*), por-*ch*, per-*ch*, ser-*ge*, for-*ge* (= fabr-*ic*)

-icle (Lat. -*iculus*) : art-*icle*, part-*icle*.

Icecle = O E *is-ga-cel* = ice-jag. Cp *Iseyokels* in footnote to *Piers Plowman*, B. XVII 227, p 315.

-iff (Lat. -*ivus*) : bail-*iff*, cait-*iff* (= cap-*tive*), plaint-*iff*. See -ive, p. 234.

-ine, -in (Lat. -*inus*) : div-*ine*, fam-*ine*, medic-*ine*, vas-*in*, citr-*in*, cous-*in*, gobl-*in*, pilgr-*im* (= pere-gr-*ine*), rav-*ine*.

Latin atonic -*ina* disappeared in Old French, hence English *dame*, *page*; Modern French has reintroduced it under the form, -*ine*, whence our *machine*.

in (Lat. -*inem*)· marg-*in*, ərig-*in*, virg-*in*.

-ism (Lat. -*ismus*, Gr. -ισμος)· de-*ism*, fatal-*ism*, ego-t-*ism*. Many are direct from the Greek, as bar-bar-*ism*, lacon-*ism*.

No words of N.Fr. origin end in -*ism*. Cp. M E. *sophime* := sophism.

-ist (Lat. *-ista*, Gr. *ι̯-τής*): bapt-*ist*, evangel-*ist*, chor-*ist*-er; M.E. soph-*ist*-er = soph-*ist*.

More recent forms are dent-*ist*, de-*ist*, exorc-*ist*, flor-*ist*, medall-*ist*, novel-*ist*, and numerous others.

-ite (Lat. *-ita*, Fr. *-ite*) forms patronymics : Israel-*ite*, Jesu-*it*.

-id (Lat. *-id-*, Gr. *-ιδ-*, Fr. *-ide*): Æne-*id*, Nere-*id*. Many modern chemical words end in *-id*, as alkalo-*id*.

-le (Lat. *-ulus, -ula, -ulum*): fab-*le*, tab-*le*, stab-*le*, peop-*le*, with preceding *c* (which is sometimes lost), we have artic-*le*, mirac-*le*, pinnac-*le*, obstac-*le*, appar-*el*, dams-*el*, fenn-*el*, lent-*il*, parc-*el* (= partic-*le*), penc-*il*, per-*il*.

Modern forms in *-bule, -cle, -cule*, are borrowed directly from the Latin

-l-ence (Lat. *-l-entia*) forms abstract nouns   There are very few of these forms in M.E.   We find pesti-*lence* and vio-*lence*, other forms are quite recent.   See -lent, p. 234.

-lency is sometimes found for *-lence*, like *-ency* for *-ence*.

-let. See -et, p. 226.

-m, -me (Lat *-men*). char-*m*, real-*m*, cri-*me*, nou-*n*, re-now-*n*, leav-*en* (= Lat. leva-*men*, Fr. lev-*ain*).

-me, the modern French form is contained in alu-*m*, legu-*me*, volu-*me*, regi-*me*.

-men, the original Lat form, is retained in all later loans, as acu-*men*, bitu-*men*, &c.

-m, -me (Lat *-ma*, Gr. *-μα*): baptis-*m*, phanto-*m* (= phantas-*m*), the-*me*.

From modern French we have borrowed diade-*m*, anagra-*m*, emble-*m*, proble-*m*.

From the Greek we get anagra-*m*, epigra-*m*, paradig-*m*, pano-ra-*ma*, enthusias-*m*, pleonas-*m*, telegram.

-ment (Lat. *-mentum*). argu-*ment*, command-*ment*, enchant-*ment*, gar-*ment*, nourish-*ment*, oint-*ment*, parliament.

It is added to Teutonic words, as, acknowledge-*ment*, atone-*ment*, bereave-*ment*, fulfil-*ment*, &c.

-mony (Lat *-mon-ıu-m*, *-mon-ıa*) cere-*mony*, matrı-*mony*, testı-*mony*.

-on, -eon, -ion, -in (Lat. *-onem*, *-ıonem*), form many nouns denoting act of, state of apt-*on*, bac-*on*, cap-*on*, falc-*on*, fel-*on*, gall-*on*, glutt-*on*, mas-*on*, mutt-*on*, simplet-*on*, tal-*on*, champ-*ıon*, compan-*ıon*, clar-*ıon*, march *ıon*-ess, on-*ıon*, stall-*ıon*, scorp-*ıon*, pant-*ıon*, pıg-*eon*, scutch-*eon*, sturg-*eon*, trunch-*eon*.

The N.Fr forms of the suffix were, (1) *-un*, *-uın*, (2) *-oun*, *-ıoun*

'oon (Fr *-on*, Ital. *-one*), ball-*oon*, bat-*oon*, drag-*oon*, harp *oon*, sal-*oon*, buff-*oon*, poltr-*oon*, are not from N. French.

Some words in *-oon* seem to be augmentatives, as, ball-*oon*, sal-*oon*, &c., others as dımınutıves as, haberge-*on*, flag-*on*.

-our (Lat. *-orem*): ard-*our*, col-*our*, fav-*our*, hon-*our*, lab-*our*, lang-*our*, lıqu-*our*, rum-*our*.

The Modern French form ıs *-eur*, as ard-*eur*, grand-*eur*, lıqu-*eur*; the N Fr was (1) *-ur*, (2) *-our*

-or, -our, -er, (Lat. *-torem*) · jur-*or*, govern-*our*, emper-*or*, antı-*or*, compıl-*or*, dıvın-*er*, found-*er*, preach-*er*, juggl-*er*, lev-*er*.

N. Fr. *-our* has become *-er* ın receıv-*er*, robb-*er*, trench-*er*

-tor (Lat. *-torem*): audi-*tor*, doc-*tor*, proc-*tor*, trai-*tor*, au-*thor*, indi-*ter*.

-our, -or, -er (Lat. *-orium*, *-oria*): min-*our*, parl-*our*, raz-*or*, viz-*or*, sciss-*ors*, count-*er*, cens-*er*, lav-*er*, (= lavat-*ure*), mang-*er*, covert-*ure*.

In M.E. we find a few forms in *-orie = ory*. (Cp Fr *-oire*,) as lavat-*orie*, orat-*orie*, purgat-*orie*.

-oir (Fr. *-oir*, Lat. *-orium*): abatt-*oir*, from modern French.

-ory, the full form of Lat. *-orium*, occurs in audit-*ory*, dormit-*ory*, refect-*ory*, repert-*ory*.

-ry, -ery (N. Fr. *-erie*): fai-*ry*, hazard-*ry*, jew-*ry*, poet-*ry*, poult-*ry*, spice-*ry*, surg-*ery*, cook-*ery*, house-wife-*ry*, mid-wife-*ry*.

We have a large number of words with this ending unknown to Middle English as, slave-*ry*, peasant-*ry*, thieve-*ry*, witch-*ery*, trump-*ery*

-ry (Lat. *-aria*): chival-*ry*, caval-*ry*, carpent-*ry*, pant-*ry*, vint-*ry*. Cp. the modern forms, chapel-*ry*, deane-*ry*, &c.

-ry (Lat. *-arium*) · dow-*ry*, laund-*ry*, vest-*ry*, treasu-*ry*.

-son (Lat. *-sionem*) · beni-*son*, mali-*son*, le-s-*son*, ori-*son*, pri-*son*, ran-*som*, rea-*son*, sea-*son*, trea-*son*, veni-*son*, fashi-*on*.

With these compare the parallel forms that have come into our language direct from Latin . benedic-*tion*, male-dic-*tion*, lec-*tion*, ora-*tion*, po-*tion*, redemp-*tion*, ra-*tion*, tradi-*tion*, fac-*tion*.

Many words now ending in -tion, as, *nation*, *salvation*, &c., once ended in *-cıun* (E E), *-cioun*, *-cıon* (M E)

-sion (Lat. *-sionem*) · conver-*sion*, man-*sion*, pen-*sion*,

pas-*sion*, pɒɪ-*son*, pro-ces-*sion*, vi-*sion*, &c ; with foi-*son* (plenty), compare pro-fu-*sion*.

-sy (Lat -*sia*, Gr. -*σιζ*): catalep-*sy*, drop-*sy*, pal-*sy*, (= paraly-*sis*), fren-*sy*.

> Nouns ending in -*sis* are modern words that have come direct from Greek

-se, a still shorter form of this suffix, occurs in apocalyp-*se*, ba-*se*, eclip-*se*.

-t (Lat. -*tus*) . condμc-*t*, feaҳ-*t* (= fac-*t*), join-*t*, poin-*t*, sain-*t*. See **y**, **t**, 232.

-t (Lat. -*tum*): deb-*t*, feaҳ-*t* (= fac-*t*), join-*t*, poin-*t*. -tᵉ(Lat. -*ta*). aun-*t*, ren-*t*, &c.   See **y**, **t**, 232.

-t, -te (Lat. -*ta*, Gr -*τηζ*) aposta-*te*, come-*t*, hermi-*t*, plane-*t*, prophe-*t*, idio-*t*.

-ter (Lat. -*ter*): mis-*ter*, mas-*ter* (= magis-*ter*), minis-*ter*, fri-*ar* (Lat. fra-*ter*)

-tery (Lat. -*tersum*) : mas-*tery*, minis-*tery*.

-tor (Lat. -*tor*). See p. 230.

-dor in battle-*dor*, mata-*dor*, is a Spanish form

-trix (Lat. -*trix*), a feminine suffix   See p. 67.

-ter, -tre (Lat -*trum*, Gr. -*τρον*) clois-*ter*, spec-*tre*, scep-*tre*.

> The full form occurs in modern words, as, "*spectrum* analysis "
> Another form of -*trum* is -*crum*, in *sepul-chre*, *brum* in *mem -brum* Cp *candela brum*, *cere-brum*.

-tude (Lat. -*tudinem*): beati-*tude*, multi-*tude*, &c., are direct from Latin. *Cus-tom* = Lat. *consuetudinem*.

-ty (Lat. -*tatem*): beau-*ty*, boun-*ty*, chari-*ty*, cruel-*ty*, feal-*ty*, (= fidelity), frail *ty*, &c.

-ule. See **le**, p. 228.

-ure (Lat. -*ura*) advent-*ure*, apert-*ure*, creat-*ure*,

forfeit-*ure*, nāt-*ure*, nurt-*ure*, meas-*ure*, past-*ure*, se-pult-*ure*, stat-*ure*, vest-*ure*

Arm-*our* = M. Lat. *armatura*

-y (Lat. *-ia*). cop-y, famil-y, felon-y, nav-y, stor-y, victor-y, &c , Ital-y, Arab-y and Arab-*ia*

-y (Lat. *-ium*)   horolog-y, jo-y, stud-y. Directly from the Latin are formed augur-y, obsequ-y, remed-y, &c.

-y (Lat. *atus*) . attorn-*ey*, deput-y, all-y

Many words in -cy, -sy, are formed on the model of Fr words in *-cie*, Lat *-tia* —cura-cy, minstrel-cy, &c. Cp degene ra-cy, intima-cy, &c., the corresponding adjectives of which end in *-ate*

-y (Lat. *-t-us*), cler-g-y: coun-t-y, duch-y, trea-t-y.

-y (Lat. *-ta*), arm-y . embass-y, chimn-*ey*, countr-y, dela-y, destin-y, entr-y, journ-*ey*, jur-y, paft-y, vall-*ey*
See -ee, p. 226.

-y (Lat. *-ies*) progen-y

II. Adjective Suffixes.

-al (Lat. *-alis*). annu-*al*, besti-*al*, casu-*al*, equ-*al*, loy-*al* (= leg-*al*), roy-*al* (= reg-*al*), &c.   See p. 224.

-al forms many new derivatives, as, festiv-*al*, celesti-*al*, comic -*al*, mathematic-*al*

-an, -ain (Lat. *-anus*) · cert-*ain*, germ-*ain*, germ-*ain*, hum-*an*, me-*an*.

There are numerous adjectives in -*an*, of recent formation that have no corresponding Latin form in -*anus* · agrari-*an*, barbari-*an*, diluvi-*an*, pedestri-*an*. See an, p. 224.

-ane (Lat. *-anus*): hum-*ane*, transmont-*ane* are modern forms.

-ant, -ent : err-*ant*, ramp-*ant*, trench-*ant*, obedi-*ent*, pati-*ent*, &c. See -ant, -ent, p 224.

-ar (Lat. -*arıs*): famili-*ar*, regul-*ar*, singul-*ar*.

-ary (Lat -*arıus*) · contr-*ary*, necess-*ary*, second-*ary*. See -ar, p. 225.

Arbıtr-*ary*, dıscıplın-*ary*, honor-*ary*, and many English derivatives ın -*ary*, having no Latin form ın -*arıus*.

The Lat -*arıus* ıs sometimes changed ınto -*arıous*, as, nef-*arıous*, greg-*arı-ous* Sometimes -*an* ıs added to -*arı*, as, agr-*arı-an*, antıqu-*arı-an*, &c

-atıc (Lat. -*atıcus*) fan-*atıc*, lun-*atıc*.

Most nouns ın -*atıc*, -*tıc*, come directly from the Latin, as aqu-*atıc*, rus-*tıc*, domes-*tıc*, &c. See -age, p. 224.

-ate (Lat. -*atus*) . delıc-*ate*, desol-*ate*, determın-*ate*, and some few other words ın -*ate* are found ın M E. coming directly from the Latin But most words wıth this ending are modern formations

Had these words come from N. Fr. they would end ın -*y*. Compare *prıvy*, secret, (Fr. *prıvé*), wıth *prıvate*

-ble, -able (Lat. -*bılıs*) accept-*able*, abomın-*able*, fee-*ble*, fox-*ble* (= fle-*bılıs*), mov-*able*, sta-*ble*.

The suffix -able ıs added to many Romance stems as, agree-*able*, change-*able*, favour-*able*, deceıv-*able*, &c.

It ıs also added to Teutonic stems · as, break-*able*, eat-*able*, laugh-*able*, sale-*able*.

Terms ın -*ıble*, are aud-*ıble*, vıs-*ıble*, are formed directly from the Latin

-ble (Lat. -*plex*): dou-*ble* (= du-*ple*), tre-*ble* (= trı-*ple*).

-ese (Ital. -*ese* Lat. -*ensis*) : Chın-*ese*, Malt-*ese* See p. 227.

-esque (Fr. *-esque*, Lat. *-iscus*). burl-*esque*, grot-*esque*, pictur-*esque*; *morrus* (dance) = mor-*esque* *i.e.* Moorish This *-esque* is allied to English *-ish*, hence the forms Fren-*ch* and Dan-*ish*, in which the Fr. suffix is anglicised.

-ac (Lat. *-acus*). demoni-*ac*, mani-*ac*.

-ic (Lat. *-icus*, *-ica*, *-icum*).. aromat-*ic*, barbar-*ic*, frant-*ic*, schismat-*ic*. *See p. 227.

It is often combined with **-al**, as cler-*ic-al*, mag-*ic-al*, mus-*ic-al*, &c.

In Old French *icus* became*es*, whence our *enem-y* = Fr *ennemi*, Lat *inimicus*, Fr *p-ic* = *p̂-ica*, *-ique* is the modern Fr̯ form. Cp. ant-*ic* (old form), with ant-*ique* (modern derivative)

-id (Lat. *-idus*). ac-*id*, pall-*id*, tep-*id*, rig-*id*, &c.

In N Fr. this *-id* disappears or is changed   Cp Eng *neat*, Fr *net*, Lat mt-*idus*   In modern learned Fr words *-ide* is used as rig-*ide*, sap-*ide*, &c.

-ile (Lat. *-ilis*). frag-*ile*, ster-*ile*, &c.

-l, -le (Lat. *-e-lis*, *-i-lis*). cru-*e-l*, civ-*i-l*, frai-*l* (= frag-*i-le*), ab-*le*, subt-*le*, gent-*le*.

-ine (Lat. *-inus*). div-*ine*, citr-*in*.

Most of the words in *-ine* are of modern formation: as, aqui-*ine*, can-*ine*, genu-*ine*, infant-*ine*, &c.

-ive (Lat. *-ivus*): able to, inclined to, act-*ive*, attent-*ive*, fugit-*ive*, pens-*ive*, &c.   See*-iff, p. 227.

In Early and Middle English these adjectives ended in *-if*: is, act*if*, attent*if*, &c. The*f* has dropped off in *hasty*, *jolly*, *testy*. Cp. *massive* with T.E *massy*, and *hasty* = basti*f* We have a large number of modern derivatives in *-ive*, as, coerc-*ive*, conclus-*ive*, affirmat-*ive*, &c   We have one hybrid, talk-*ative*.

-lent (Lat *-l-entus*) full of · corpu*lent*, opu-*lent*, vio-*lent*, &c.

-ory (Lat. *-orius*) : amat-*ory*, mandat-*ory*, &c.

-ose (Lat. *-osus*) · bellic-*ose*, joc-*ose*, mor-*ose*.

-ous (Lat. *-osus*) full, like : copi-*ous*, curi-*ous*, danger-*ous*, fam-*ous*, lepr-*ous*, &c.

-ous also represents Lat *-us* in the following —

(1) Assidu-*ous*, continu-*ous*, ingenu-*ous*, &c

(2) Anxi-*ous*, arbore-*ous*, &c

(3) In the endings *-vorous, -fluous, -par-ous* :—omnivor-*ous*, superflu-*ous*, ovipar-*ous*, &c

The use of **-ous** has been much extended in modern English. It is added to adjective stems, as, alacri-*ous*, asper-*ous*, atroci-*ous* precipit-*ous*, carbonifer-*ous*.

It occurs in many modern derivatives, as contradict-*ious*, felicit-*ous*, joy-*ous*.

It is added to some few Teutonic roots, as murder-*ous*.

Ccurt-eous = E E. curt-*eis*, O Fr curt-*eis*, court-*ois*

Boister-ous = M.E. *boisteis, boist-ous, bostwys*, from Welsh *buystus*, rough, rude

Right-eous. Here *-eous* is a corruption of *-wise* See § 238, p 213.

Wondr-ous. Here *-ous* is for the adverbial suffix *-s*

"This matter is *wonders* precious."

Everyman, O.E Plays, ed. Hazlitt, I. p. 99

Wonder (used as an adverb) = O.E *wundr-um*

Wondr-ous-ly = *wunder-s-ly* = M E *wonderly*.

"Of the elements so *wondersly* formed "

The Four Elements, ed Hazlitt, p. 16.

-t, -te (Lat. *-tus*), discree-*t*, straigh-*t*, strai-*t*, modes-*t*, hones-*t*, chas-*te*, mu-*te*.

Words like *elegt, perfect, distinct,* &c. have come direct from the Latin.

In Fr. the *c* disappears before *t*   Cp *strast* and *strict.*

-und, -ond (Lat. -*undus*) ro-*und* (= rot-*und*), joc-*und*, sec-ond.

y (I·· ··· ··) ··r··· j (I·· ··r····· We find
·· ··,· ·· 11 (·· ·   II. ···

-y (N Fr -*if*, Lat -*ivus*) hast-y, joll-y, mass-y, test-y.
See -ive, p. 234

III. Verbal Suffixes.

-ate (Lat. -··,· ·· ·· ·· ··· · ··· · ··· · ···· \ forms
verbs from I · · · 11 1 · ··· · · · ·· ·· ·
ate, assassin-a· ·· · · ·· ·· · · · · · · · · ·· · ··
accentu-ate, filtr-ate, superannu-ate, &c.

-ise, -ize (Lat -*isare*, Fr. -*iser*, Gr -ιζω) forms verbs
from nouns and adjectives colon-*ise*, pulver-*ise*, civil-
ise, fertil-*ise*

-ish (Lat. esc-o, Fr. -*iss* in the pres. part. of verbs
in -*ir*): establ-*ish*, flour-*ish*, fin-*ish*, nour-*ish*, pol-*ish*,
&c.

fy (Lat. -*ficare*, Fr -*fier*) : edi-*fy*, magni-*fy*, signi-*fy*.

245 COMPOSITION WITH ROMANIC PREFIXES.

Words with these prefixes are divisible into two classes,
'·' ····· ···· ···· ···· ···· ···· ···· ···· ···· ····
·   · · ·   · · ·   ·   · ·
·· ··.   ··   ··   ·· · ·· ·· ·

A, av (Fr *a*, *av*, Lat. *a̅*, *ab*, *abs*, away from) :—

(1) A-vaunt (Fr. *a-vant*, Lat. *ab-ante*), a-d-vance,
a-d-vantage, a-vert, a-bridge, a-s-soil (*absolve*), abs-
tain, ab-ound, ab-use.

(2) Ab-dicate, ab-sent, abs-cond, &c.

A, ad (O Fr. *ad*, *a*, Fr. *à*, Lat. *ad*, *ŏ*) —

By assimilation *ad-* becomes *ac-*, *af-*, *ag-*, *al-*, *an-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-*

(1) A-bate, ac-quaint (M.Lat *ad-cognitare*), ac-quit, ac-cord, (O.Fr. *a conter*), a-c-count.

A-chieve, ac-cuse, a-d-venture, (M E *a-venture*), ad-journ (M E *ajorne*), ac-join, ad-verse, ad-versary, af-firm, af-fiance, af-finity, af-ford, a-gree, ag-grieve, (M.E *ag-regge* and *a-greve*), a-d-monish (M E *a-moneste*), a-mount, a-merce, al-ledge, al-ly, al-low, ap-parel, ap-pear, ap-pease, ap-ply, ap-proach, ar-rive, as-sail, as-sault (M E *asaute*), as-size, as-suage, as-semble, at-tain, a-venge, a-vow.

Cp the later loans *adieu*, *adroit*, *alarm*, *alert*, *apart*, &c

(2) Ad-apt, ac-cept, ac-cumulate, ag-gravate, al-leviate, an-nex, &c.

An, ante (Fr. *ans*, *ains*, Lat. *ante*).—

(1) An-cestor (M E *ancessoure*), an-cestry, v-an-guard (= Fr *av-ant-garde*)

(2) Ante-cede, ante-meridian, ante-chamber.

(3) Ante-date, ant*e*-cipate, seem formed on the model of the Fr. *ant-dater*, *ant-cipier*.

Circum, circu (Lat *circum*, around) —

Circum-cise, circu-it, are found in M E.

Modern compounds with this prefix are very common : *circum*-scribe, *circum*-stance, &c

Co, com, con (Fr *co*, *com*, *con*, Lat. *cum*, with) :—

Com becomes col before *l*, cor before *r*, and co before vowels.

(1) Col-late, com-mand, com-mon, com-pany,

con-ceive, cón-ceit, con-demn, con-duct, con-found, con-strue, con-vey, con-voy, &c. ; coun-sel, coun-tenance, co-vent, con-vent.

Conch T-- *rïī--r·* , court (Lat *c-m-m--rē*, coat (Lat. *- u- -r-*, custom *-l- --ur-re-m-rm-*, cover, (L- *-r- -r--m*), curry (·- *-·-r-m·r-*) O r·- *-m--* Let *-m--n-n- -·-r--m- -.-r.r-* , c- -f -n- l·-.-·- -·- r-l·--r-·a·ge Cr l c-·ah *-retn,* (Lat- *r- t- -n-* ·-r- N-·r, *bt--·e r-·n-*)
' Quail, to curdle (Fr. *co-iller*, Lat. *coagulare*).

(2) Modern forms are very numerous : *col*-locate, *com*-prehend, *con*-duct, *cor*-relation, *co*-eval, *co* executor, &c.

(3) Co is sometimes jóined to Teutonic roots, as, *co*-worker, *co*-elder.

Counter, contra (Fr. *contre*, Lat *contra*, against) :

The N.Fr. form *counter* is used as a separate word in "to run *counter* to" It has given rise to the verb *en-counter* (M E. *countre*)

(1) **Counter-feit, counter-plead, counter-pane,** cont-roller (cp. Fr. *contrôle* = *contr̄e-rôle*), contr-ary, contra-diction.

(2) *Counter*-act, *counter*-balance, *counter*-mand, *contra*-vene, *contro*-vert, &c.

(3) **contra-band** is a modern French loan.

De (Fr. *de*, *dé;* Lat. *de*, down, from, away) :—

(1) **De-ceive, de-ceit, de-clare, de-cline, de-crease,** de-fend, de-feat, de-form, de-gree, de-light, de-ny, de-liver, de-nounce, de-prave, de-serve, de-sire, de-scend, de-scry, (= de-scribe), de-spise, de-spite, de-stroy, de-vise, de-vour, &c.

Di-s-dain (M.E. *dedain*), di-still (M.E. *destylle*).

(2) *De*-ception, *de*-fect, *de*-lectable, &c.

De, dis, di (Fr. *dis, dé,* Lat. *dis, di,*asunder, in two, difference, negation):—

In E.E. the prefix *dis* has its N Fr. form *des* or *de*

(1) *De*-part, de-fy, de-lay, dis-cover, dis-charge, disguise, dis-honour, display, dis-turb, dis-please, dispute, &c.

(2) *Dis*-cern, *di*-gest, *dif*-fer, &c.

(3) *Deluge* (= mod. Fr *déluge,* Lat. *di-luvium*

(4) The following are hybrids . *dis*-believe (= misbelieve), *dis*-like (= mislike), *dis*-own, &c.

E, es, ex (Fr. *es, e,* Lat. *ex,* out of, from):—

(1) *E*-late, e-lection, es-say, es-say, es-cape, issue, es-pecial, s-pecial, s-ample (= ex-ample), ensample, ex-amine, ex-cite, ex-cuse, ex-ile, a-mend (= e-mend), a-fraid (Lat *exfrigdare*) a-bash = O.Fr. *es-bahir.*

(2) *Ex*-alt, *e*-lect, *ex*-ecute, *ex*-empt, *ex*-pect, &c. ; *ex*-emperor, *ex*-mayor

(3) *Efface, élite* (= elect), are from modern French.

Extra (Lat. *extra,* beyond.)

(1) *Extra*-ordinary, *extra*-vagant.

(2) *Extra*-work, *extra*-freight, are hybrids.

Em, en, in (Fr. *em, en,* Lat. *in,* in, into, on) —

(1) *Em*-balm, *em*-bellish, *em*-brace, *en*-chant, *en*-counter, *en*-cumber, *en*-dite, *en*-dow, *en*-gage, *en*-force, *en*-hance, *en*-join, *en*-joy, *en*-rich, *en*-tice, *en*-treat, *en*-viron, *en*-vy,* &c.; *an*-oint, *am*-bush, *im*-pair, *im*-prison, *il*-lusion, *in*-cense, *in*-cline, *in*-quire (*en*-quire).

Many words once beginning with *en-* now have *in-*.

(2) *In*-nate, *il*-lumine, *im*-migrate, &c.

(3) Hybrids are *em*-bolden, *en*-shrine, *en*-dear, &c.

In (Lat. *in*, not) :—

(1) *In*-nocent. *in*-constance, *in*-fant, *im*-perfect (= M E *imparfit*)

(2) It is prefixed to nouns, adjectives, and verbs.—

(a) *In*-convenience, *im*-piety, *il*-liberality.

(b) *In*-cautious, *im*-politic, *il*-legal, *ir*-regular.

(c) *In*-capacitate, *in*-dispose, *il*-legalize, *im*-mortalize.

Un often takes the place of *in*, as *un*-able, *un*-apt, *un*-certain, &c.

Enter, inter, intro (O.Fr. *enter;* Fr. *entre,* Lat. *inter, intro,* within, between) —

(1) **Enter**-prise, enter-tain, **inter**-dict (= M E. *enter-dite*), *inter*-change (M.E *enter-change*)

(2) *Inter*-cept, *inter*-sect, *intro*-duce, &c.

Ob (Lat. *ob,* in front of, against) —

(1) *Ob*-lige, ob-ey, **oc**-cupy, **of**-fer, of-fend, of-fence, of-fice, op-pose

(2) *Ob*-ject, *ob*-struct, *oc*-cur, *of*-ficiate, &c.

Per (O.Fr. *per,* Fr. *par,* Lat. *per,* through) —

(1) **Per**-ceive, per-form, per-ish, par-don, pur-sue

(2) *Per*-jure, *per*-secute, *pel*-lucid, *pol*-lute, &c.

Post (Lat. *post,* after) .—

(1) *Puny* = Fr. *puîné,* O.Fr. *puis-né,* Lat. *post natus.*

(2) *Post*-pone, *post*-date, *post*-script, &c.

Pre (Fr. *pré,* Lat. *præ,* before) :—

(1) Pre-cept, pre-face, pre-late, pre-sence, pre-tend, pro-vost, pre-ach (= Lat. *prædicare*).

(2) Modern formations are numerous : *pre*-dict, *pre*-cinct, *pre*-announce, &c.

Preter (Fr. *préter;* Lat. *præter,* past) :—

(1) *Preter*-ite, *preter*-mit.

(2) *Preter*-natural, *preter*-perfect.

Par, pur, pro (Fr. *pôr, pour,* Lat. *pro,* forth, forward, before) :—

(1) Por-tray, pur-chase, pur-pose, pur-sue, pur-vey, pro-cede, pro-cess, pro-cure, pro-nounce.

(2) *Pro*-vide, *pro*-pose, *pro*-consul, *pro*-noun.

(3) *Por*-trait = Fr. *pour*-trait

Re, red (Fr. *re,* Lat. *red, re,* back, again) :—

(1) Re-bell, re-ceive, re-claim, re-creant, re-cover, re-join, re-nounce, re-member, re-pair, re-pent, re-prove, re-quire, re-store, re-semble, re-treat, r-ally (Lat. *re-alligare*), re-n-der (Lat *red-dere*), red-ound.

(2) Modern formations are numerous : *re*-probate, *re*-duce, re-*act*, &c.

(3) *Re*-but = Fr. *re-buter*

(4) Hybrids . *re*-build, *re*-mind, *re*-new, &c.

Retro (Fr. *rière,* Lat. *retro*) :—

(1) *Rear*-ward, *arrear, rear.* Cp. M.E. *arrerage* (arrears)

(2) *Retro*-grade, *retro*-spect, &c.

Se, sed (Fr. *se,* Lat. *sed, se,* apart, away) :—

(1) *Se*-ver, *se*-veral.

(2) *Se*-clude, *se*-parate, *sed-ition*, &c.

Sub, so (O Fr. *so;* Fr. *se, su, sou,* Lat. *sub,* under, up from below) :—

(1) Sub-tle, suc-cour (M.E. *socour*), suc-ceed, suf-fer, *sum*-mons, sup-pose, sus-tain, *so*-journ, &c.

(2) *Sub*-jection, *suc*cinct, *sug*-gest, &c. It denotes (a) diminution, as *sub*- tepid, (b) of a lower order, as *sub*-committee

(3) Hybrids : *sub*-let, *sub*-kingdom.

Sur, super (Fr *sur,* Lat. *super,* above, beyond) .—

(1) Sur-coat, sur-face, sur-feit, sur-plice, sur-name, sur-vey ; super-flu-ous, super-scription, which occur in M.E., are directly from the Latin.

(2) Modern forms are *sur*-prise, *sur*-pass, sur-charge, *super*-ficies, *super*-scribe, &c., *summerset* = Fr. *soubre*ṣaut, Lat. *super*-saltum.

Tres, tra, trans (O Fr *tres,* Fr. *tré, tra,* Lat. *trans,* across) :—

(1) Tres-pass, tra-itor, trea-son. tra-vel, tra-verse, trans-figure, trans-form, trans-late, trans migration.

(2) *Trans*-cription, *trans*-port, *tra*-dition, &c., are modern forms.

Ultra (Lat. *ultra,* beyond) :—

(1) Out-rage.

(2) *Ultra*-liberal.

Vis, vice (Fr. *vis*, Lat. *vice*, instead of) .—

(1) **Vic**-ar.

(2) *Vis*-count, *vice*-roi, &c

Bis, bi (Lat. *bis*, twice ; *bini*, two by two) .—

(1) None.

(2) *Bis*-sextile, *bi*-ennial, *bin*-ocular.

(3) *Biscuit* is modern French *biscuit*, Lat. *bis-coctum*.

Demi (Fr. *demi* ; Lat. *dimidium*, half) :—

(1) *Demi*-god, *demi*-quaver.

Semi (Lat. *semi*, half) .

(1) *Semi*-circle, *semi*-column.

Mal, mau, male (Fr. *mal, mau*, Lat. *male*, ill) .—

(1) **Mau**-gre, *mal*-ady.

(2) *Male*-diction, *mal*-evolent.

(3) *Mal*-treat, *mal*-content.

Non (Lat. *non*, not) :—

(1) *Noun*-power impotence. Chaucer's *Boethius*, p. 75.

(2) *Non*-sense, *non*-existent.

(3) *Non*-chalance, *non*-pareil.

Mis (Fr. *mes* ; Lat *minus*, less) —

(1) *Mis*-chance (M.E. *mescheance*), **mis**-*chief* (M.E. *meschief*), (2) mis-fortune and mis-nomer are modern analogous forms.

(3) *Més*-alliance.

Pen (Fr. *pen* ; Lat. *pæne*, almost) :—

Pen-insula, *pen*-ultimate.

Sans, siñe (Fr. *sans*, Lat. *sine*, without) —

(*?*) *Sine*-cure, *sin*-cere.

(3) *Sans*-culotte, *sans*-culottism.

246. Greek Prefixes.

Nearly all compounds with Greek prefixes are of late origin.

An-, a- (*ἀν*, *ἀ*), *negative* like Lat. *in-* and Eng. *un-*. an-archy, an-æsthetic, a-pathy.

Amphi- (*ἀμφί*), *about*, on both sides. Cp. Lat. *am*, *amb*, O.E. *umbe*, *ymbe*, about. amphi-bious, amphi-theatre.

Ana- (*ἀνά*), *up*, to, again, back . ana-logy, analysis, an-ec-dote.

Anti- (*ἀντί*), opposite to, against · anti-dote, anti-pathy, anti-thesis, ant-arctic.

Apo-, ap- (*ἀπό*), away from, from. Cp. Lat. *ab*, Eng. *off :* apo-logy, apo-strophe, apo-gee, apo-crypha, ap-helion.

Apocalypse, from the Latin, occurs in Middle English ; also *pocalips* (*Piers Plowman*, B p 215).

Arch-, archi- (*ἀρχή*), chief, head : arch-heretic, arch-aism, archi-tect.

Shakespeare uses *arch* as a root in *King Lear*, u. 1, "My worthy *arch*." *Arch-bishop* occurs in M E. Chaucer has *archwyves* (*Clerkes Tale*), *archi-deknes* (*Prologue*). The last existed in O.E.

Auto-, aut- (*αὐτο*), self : auto-crat, auto-graph.

Cata-, cath-, cat- (*κατά*), down, downwards.

about: **cata**-ract, **cata**-strophe, **cath**-olic, **cat**-hedral, **cat**-egorize.

Dia- (διά), through: **dia**-meter, **dia**-gonal.

Di- (δί) Cp. Lat. *dis*, Eng. *to:* **di**-syllable, (often mis-spelt *dissyllable*) **di**-phthong.

Dys- (δυς) ill: **dys**-peptic, **dys**-entery.

Ec-, ex- (ἐκ, ἐξ) out, forth, cp. Lat. *ex:* **ec**-centric, -lectic, **ex**-orcism.

En- (ἐν), in. Cp. Lat. *in-:* **en**-thusiasm, **en**-tomology, **en**-comium, **em**-piric, **em**-phasis, **el**-liptical.

Epi-, ep- (ἐπί), upon, on, by. **epi**-demic, **epi**-taph, **epi**-tome, **ep**-och.

Eu-, well . **eu**-logy, **eu**-phony.

U in *Utopia* is for *ov*, not *ev.*

Evangelist occurs in M.E. and comes through the Latin.

Hemi- (ἡμι), half: **hemi**-stich, **hemi**-sphere.

Hyper- (ὑπέρ), above, beyond. Cp. Lat. *super*, Eng. *over:* **hyper**-bole, **hyper**-critical.

Hypo-, hyp- (ὑπο), under. Cp. Lat. *sub:* **hypo**-crite, **hypo**-thesis, **hyp**-hen.

Meta-, met- (μετά), after, *trans:* **meta**-phorical, **meta**-morphosis, (cp. Latin *trans*-form), **met**-hod.

Mono-, mon- (μονο), single, alone: **mono**-graph, **mon**-archy. Also *monk* = O.E. *munec.*

Pan- (πάν), all . **pan**-theistic, **pan**-acea.

Para-, par- (παρά), beside, against: **para**-dox, **para**-site, **para**-phrase, **par**-helion, **para**-ble. Cp. *parley*, from Fr. through Latin.

Peri- (περί), round. Cp. Lat. *per*, Eng. *for:* **peri**-meter, **peri**-odical, **peri**-phrasis.

Pro- (πρό), before Cp. Lat. *pro*, Eng. *fore:* **pro**-logue, **pro**-gnostic.

Pro-phet and pro-phecy, prologue, proem occur in M E.   Pro-gramme is Fr.

Pros- (πρός), towards . pros-elyte, pros-ody.

Syn- (σύν), with ; syn-opsis, syn-tax, sym-pathy, syl-logism, sy-stem.

247. We have some few Greek suffixes that have come from Latin though Norman-French. See suffixes, -ic (pp. 227, 234), -m (p. 228), -ist (p 228) -sy (p. 231), -ize (p. 236).

APPENDIX.

Note to p. 68. he and she. In M.E. we find he and she used as nouns.

> " Queþer-sum it war *sco* or *he*,
> To godd be-taght þan suld it be."
>   C. MUNDI, C. l. 10205.

Note to p. 96 former = O.E. *forma*, M E. *forme*, the r seems to have arisen out of the final e; former occurs in the *Gottingen* text of the Cursor Mundi; but *Fairfax* has forme and *Cotton* form   See Cursor Mundi, (ed Morris, p 526, l. 9156).

Note to p. 122. What and aught: "gif he *hwæt* dælan wyle "=" gif he *awuht* delan wule." (See *O. E. Hom.* i. p. 297 and p. 103.)

Note to p. 189. a = of. Cp. the Gottingen and Cotton texts of the C. Mundi, l 8968.

> " Hu all þis werld sal wite *awas* "
>   COTTON.
> " Hou all þis world suld wit *of way* "
>   GOTTINGEN.

" Wendaþ mîn heafoð *ofdune*, forþon þe mîn Drihten Hælend Crist of heofenum *adune* to eorþan astag "

" Turn my head *adown* (downwards), because my Lord Jesus Christ came from heaven *adoun* to earth."—*Blicling Homilies*, ed. Morris, p. 191.

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the pages.

ORICAL COURSE FOR
SCHOOLS,

EDITED BY

EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L.

The following are now ready —

In preparation.—

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

MACMILLAN AND CO

SCIENCE CLASS-BOOKS.

ANATOMY —ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ANA-
TOMY By St GEORGE MIVART, F R S   With upwards of 400
Illustrations 18mo 6s 6d

ASTRONOMY.—POPULAR ASTRONOMY, with Illus-
trations   By Sir G B AIRY, C B, Astronomer Royal   New
Edition 18mo 4s 6d

ASTRONOMY.—ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRO-
NOMY   With Illustrations By J NORMAN LOCKYER, F R S With
Coloured Diagram New Edition 18mo 5s 6d

QUESTIONS on the SAME, 1s 6d

BOTANY   LESSONS IN ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ

CHEMISTRY —LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHE-
MISTRY   By Professor ROSCOE, F R S   With ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ
and Chromo-lithograph of the Solar Sp   ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ   ᴇ ᴇ
4s. 6d

CHEMISTRY   ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ   ᴇ   ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ   NIOR COURSE
ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ   With Preface by
ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ

LOGIC   ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN LOGIC, ᴇ ᴇ
ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ   New

PHYSIOLOGY   LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHY-
ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ

QUESTIONS on the SAME   1s 6d

PHYSICS   LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS.
ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ   ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ   With Coloured Diagram
ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ ᴇ   18mo 4s 6d

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS   By MILLI-
CENT GARRETT FAWCETT   With Questions   New Edition 18mo
2s. 6d.

STEAM : AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE   By JOHN
PERRY, B E , late Lecturer in Physics at Clifton College   With
numerous Illustrations, Examples, and Exercises 18mo 4s 6d

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

SCIENCE PRIMERS

FOR

ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS.

UNDER THE JOINT EDITORSHIP OF

Professors HUXLEY, ROSCOE, and BALFOUR STEWART.

PRIMER OF CHEMISTRY   By H E ROSCOE,
F R S , Professor of Chemistry in Owens College, Man-
chester 18mo *Third Edition • 1s*

PRIMER OF PHYSICS.   By BALFOUR STEWART,
F R S , Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College,
Manchester 18mo   *Third Edition*   1s.

PRIMER OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By
A GEIKIE, LL D , F R S , Murchison Professor of
Geology and Mineralogy in the University of Edinburgh.
With numerous Illustrations 18mo cloth *Fourth Edition*
1s

PRIMER OF GEOLOGY.   By PROFESSOR GEIKIE,
F.R.S. With Illustrations   18mo   *Second Edition*   1s

PRIMER OF PHYSIOLOGY   By MICHAEL FOSTER,
M D , F R S   With Illustrations   18mo   1s

PRIMER OF ASTRONOMY   By J. N LOCKYER,
F.R S   With Illustrations   18mo   1s

Preparation.

INTRODUCTORY. By PROFESSOR HUXLEY, F.R.S.

PRIMER OF BOTANY. By J D. HOOKER, C.B.,
F.R.S.

MACMILLAN & CO., LONDON.

THE REV. BARNARD SMITH

ARITHMETICAL WORKS.

ARITHMETIC and ALGEBRA. 13th Edition.
Crown 8vo 10s 6d

ARITHMETIC. For the Use of Schools   New
Edition   Crown 8vo   4s 6d   KEY, 8s 6d.

EXERCISES in ARITHMETIC   With ANSWERS.
Crown 8vo. limp cloth 2s 6d   Or, sold separately as
follows —Part I, 1s , Part II, 1s   ANSWERS, 6d.

SHILLING BOOK of ARITHMETIC. For
National and Elementary Schools. 18mo   Or, separately
—Part I , 2d , Part II , 3d , Part III., 7d   With
ANSWERS, 18mo. 1s 6d —KEY, 4s 6d

EXAMINATION PAPERS in ARITHMETIC.
In Four Parts   New Edition   18mo   1s 6d   The Same,
with ANSWERS, 18mo. 1s 9d —KEY, 18mo   4s 6d

SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK of ARITHMETIC   18mo.
3s   Or Parts I and II , 10d each, and Part III , 1s —
KEY, complete, 18mo 6s. 6d , or Three Parts, 2s
each

THE METRIC SYSTEM of ARITHMETIC : its
Principles and Application   With numerous Examples
Written expressly for Standard V in National Schools.
Fourth Edition   18mo cloth sewed   3d

A CHART of the METRIC SYSTEM. For School
Walls   The old Edition   On Roller, 1s 6d , on Roller,
  ; 6d With a full-length Metre
Measure, subdivided into Decimètres, Centimètres, and
Millimètres   Also, a small Chart, on Card, 1d.

EASY LESSONS in ARITHMETIC   Combining,
Exercises in Reading,   ,   D
P   G   '   '   C   the
cloth sewed   9d

    * * Diagrams for School Walls in preparation. -

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

Logue of *Educational Books*,

Published by MACMILLAN and Co.,

Bedford Street, Strand, London.

CLASSICAL.

Æschylus.—THE EUMENIDES. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. *7s. 6d.*
The Greek text adopted in this Edition is based upon that of Wellauer. "A most useful feature in the work is the Analysis of Muller's celebrated dissertations."—BRITISH QUARTERLY REVIEW.

Aristotle. — AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC. With Analysis, *•*Notes, and Appendices. By E. M. COPE, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity Coll. Cambridge 8vo 14s.

ARISTOTLE ON FALLACIES; OR, THE SOPHISTICI ELENCHI. With Translation and Notes by E. POSTE, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. 8*s 6d.*
"It is not only scholarlike and careful, it is also perspicuous."— GUARDIAN. *"A work of great skill"*—SATURDAY REVIEW.

Aristophanes.—THE BIRDS. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by B H. KENNEDY, D.D , Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo 6s.
"My wish," says the author, "has been to produce a translation of 'The Birds' which may be agreeable to the taste of English readers. For this purpose I have chosen English metres."

Blackie.—GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES, By JOHN STUART BLACKIE, Professor of Greek in the Univ. of Edinburgh. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
"Why should the old practice of conversing in Latin and Greek be altogether discarded?"—PROFESSOR JOWETT.
The present little volume furnishes a series of twenty-five graduated dialogues on parallel columns of Greek and English on a great variety of interesting subjects.

Cicero. — THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION. With Introduction and Notes. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by JOHN E. B. MAYOR. M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer of St. John's College, Cambridge. Fourth Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.
"On the whole we have rarely met with an edition of a classical author which so thoroughly fulfils the requirements of a good school

Cicero—*continued.*

THE ORATIONS OF CICERO AGAINST CATIL....
Notes and an Introduction. From the German of KARL HALM,
with additions by A S WILKINS, M.A., Owens College, Man-
chester. New Edition Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d*

Demosthenes.—ON THE CROWN. With Intro-
ductions AGAINST CTESIPHON. By Gr. A. Simcox, ..
... ... 8vo 5*s*
" *A neat and useful eantion* '—ATHENÆUM.

Greenwood.—THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR
... ...
... ... Oxon. ...

Hodgson.—MYTHOLOGY FOR LATIN VERSIFICATION.
A brief Sketch of the Fables of the Ancients, prepared to be
rendered into Latin Verse for Schools. By F. HODGSON, B.D.,
late Provost of Eton. New Edition, revised by F. C. HODGSON,
M A. 18mo. 3*s*

Homer's Odyssey.—THE NARRATIVE OF ODYSSEUS.
With a Commentary by J   W   B   .   M A . .. y
Professor of Latin at Can'   ...   Nil   11   .
8vo. 3*s*

Horace.—THE WORKS OF HORACE rendered into English
... ...
... ...
... ...
... ... THE CRUCIAL EPIGRAMS....
... ...
bridge. Extra fcap 8vo. 4*s* 6*d*

Juvenal.—THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL. With a
Commentary. By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor
of Latin at Cambridge. Second Edition, enlarged. Vol. I. Crown
8vo. 7*s* 6*d* Or Parts I and II. Crown 8vo. 3*s*. 6*d.* each
"*A painstaking and critical edition.*"—SPECTATOR. "*For responsive scholarship, extensive acquaintance with Latin literature, and familiar knowledge of continental criticism, ancient and modern, it is unsurpassed among English editions.*"—EDINBURGH REVIEW.

A TABLE OF IRREGULAR GREEK VERBS,
according to the arrangement of Curtius' Greek Grammar.
By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., Fellow and late Lecturer of Brasenose
College, Oxford, one of the Masters in Clifton College. 8vo.
cloth. New Edition. 1s.

*The system of this table has been borrowed from the excellent Greek
Grammar of Dr. Curtius.*

Mayor (John E. B.)—FIRST GREEK READER. Edited
after KARL HALM. with Corrections and large Additions by JOHN
E. B. MAYOR, M.A.

Mayor (Joseph B.)—GREEK FOR BEGINNERS. By J.
B. MAYOR.

mencement."—STANDARD.

Nixon

Peile (John, M.A.)—AN INTRODUCTION TO GREEK
AND LATIN ETYMOLOGY. By JOHN PEILE, M.A., Fellow

REVIEW.

Plato.—THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO. Translated into English,
with an Analysis and Notes, by J. LL. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J.
VAUGHAN, M.A. Third Edition, with Vignette Portraits of Plato
and Socrates, engraved by JEENS from an Antique Gem. 18mo.
4s. 6d.

*An introductory notice supplies some account of the life of Plato, and
the translation is preceded by an elaborate analysis "A book which
any reader, whether acquainted with the original or not, can peruse with
assurance as well as profit.*—SATURDAY REVIEW.

Plautus.—THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS. With Notes
Prolegomena, and Excursus. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., for-
merly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow.

Edited by Professor GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., c.
of Glasgow. 8vo. 14s.
"*The fruits of that exhaustive research and that ripe and well-digested
scholarship which the author brought to bear upon everything that he
undertook are visible throughout.*"—PALL MALL GAZETTE.

Potts, Alex. W., M.A.—HINTS TOWARDS LATIN
PROSE COMPOSITION. By ALEX. W. POTTS, M.A., late
Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; and Head Master of
Rugby School; formerly Head Master of the Fettes College,
Edinburgh. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s.

*An excellent little work, based on a sound knowledge of the laws of
mind and language, and evidently the result of long and careful practical
experience. It is one of the best books of its kind that we have ever seen.*
The Greek and Latin exercises which it contains are of very great service.

Roby.—A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, from
Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., late Fellow of St.
John's College, Cambridge. In Two Parts. Third Edition.—
Book I. Sounds. Book II. Inflexions. Part III. Word-for-
mation. Appendices. 8vo. 8s. 6d.—Part II. Syntax, Prepo-
sitions, &c. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

*The book is marked by the clear and practical insight of a master in his
art. A book that would be creditable to any country.*—ATHENÆUM.

Rust.—FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.
By the Rev. G. RUST, M.A. of Pembroke College, Oxford,
Master of the Lower School, King's College, London. New
Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

Sallust.—CAII SALLUSTII CRISPI CATILINA ET JUGUR-
THA. For Use in Schools. With copious Notes. By J.
MURRAY, B.D. New Edition, carefully revised and enlarged.
Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d. Or separately, the Catiline, 2s. 6d., and the
Jugurtha, 2s. 6d.

Tacitus.—THE HISTORY OF TACITUS TRANSLATED
INTO ENGLISH. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J.
BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and a Map. New and Cheaper
Issue. 8vo. 6s.

We wish to say, for any first Issue of this work . . .

TACITUS, THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA OF. A Revised
Text, English Notes, and Maps. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A.,
and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.
Or separately, 2s. each.

*"A model of careful editing, being at once compact, complete, and
correct, as well as neatly printed and elegant in style"*—ATHENÆUM.

THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA. Translated into English
by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With
Maps and Notes. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

*table and exact; may be perused with pleasure by all, and
to advantage by the classical student."*—ATHENÆUM.

Theophrastus.—THE CHARACTERS OF THEO-
PHRASTUS. An English Translation from a Revised Text.
With Introduction and Notes. By R. C. JEBB, M.A., Public
Orator, and late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In the press.*]

*. . . . .
. . . .
of the best scholars he . . . .
. . . .
. . . .
the grasp and comprehension of ordinary readers.*—SATURDAY REVIEW.

Thring.—Works by the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., Head Master
of Uppingham School.

A LATIN GRADUAL. A First Latin Construing Book for
Beginners New Edition, enlarged, with Coloured Sentence Maps.
Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.
" Very well suited to young students."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

A CONSTRUING BOOK. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Thucydides.—THE SICILIAN EXPEDITION. Being Books
VI. and VII. of Thucydides, with Notes. New Edition, revised
and enlarged, with Map. By the Rev. PERCIVAL FROST, M.A.,
late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge Fcap. 8vo. 5s.
*. . . This edition is mainly a grammatical one. " The notes are excellent
of their kind. Mr. Frost seldom passes over a difficulty, and what
ever is always to the point."*—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

Virgil.—THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO
ENGLISH PROSE, with Notes, Introductions, Running Analysis,
and an Index, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A. and SAMUEL LEE,
M.A. Second Edition. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 4s. 6d.
*The original has been faithfully rendered, and paraphrase altogether
avoided. At the same time, the translators have endeavoured to adapt
the book to the use of the English reader. " A more complete edition of
Virgil in English it is scarcely possible to conceive than the scholarly work
before us."*—GLOBE.

Wright.—Works by J. WRIGHT, M.A., late Head Master of
Sutton Coldfield School.

HELLENICA ; OR, A HISTORY OF GREECE IN GREEK, as
related by Diodorus and Thucydides ; being a First Greek Reading
Book, with explanatory Notes, Critical and Historical. Third
Edition, with a Vocabulary. 12mo. 3s. 6d.
" A good plan well executed."—GUARDIAN.

A HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR ; or, The Form and Use of Words
in Latin, with Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

Wright—*continued*

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME An Easy Narrat
    from the First Book of Livy by the omission of Difficult Passag
    being a First Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes.
    Fifth Edition. Feap 8vo 3*   With Vocabulary, 3* 6d
" *The Notes are abundant, explicit, and full of such grammatical and
other information as boys require.* —ATHENÆUM

FIRST LATIN STEPS   OR, AN INTRODUCTION BY A
    SERIES OF EXAMPLES TO THE STUDY OF THE
    LATIN LANGUAGE Crown 8vo 5*

ATTIC PRIMER Arrange 1 for the Use of Beginners Extra fcap
    8vo 4* 6d

MATHEMATICS.

Airy —Works by SIR G B AIRY K C B Astronomer Royal —

ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL
    EQUATIONS Designed for the Use of Students in the Univer-
    sities   With Diagrams   New Edition   Crown 8 o cloth.
    5* 6d

ON THE ALGEBRAICAL AND NUMERICAL THEORY OF
    ERRORS OF OBSERVATIONS AND THE COMBINA
    TION OF OBSERVATIONS Crown 8vo cloth   6* 6d

UNDULATORY THEORY OF OPTICS Designed for the Use of
    Students in the University New Edition Crown 8vo cloth
    6* 6d

ON SOUND AND ATMOSPHERIC VIBRATIONS Wi   ː
    Mathematical Elements of Music Designed for the Use of Stu   ɪs
    of the University   Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged
    Crown 8vo 9*

A TREATISE OF MAGNETISM Designed for the use of
    Students in the University Crown 8vo 9* 6d

Airy (Osmund). — A TREATISE ON GEOMETRICAL
    OPTICS Adapted for the use of the Higher Classes in Schools
    By OSMUND AIRY, B A , one of the Mathematical Masters in
    Wellington College   Extra fcap 8vo   3* 6d
" *Carefully and lucidly written, and rendered as simple as possible by
the use in all cases of the most elementary form of investigation.*"—
ATHENÆUM

Bayma.—THE ELEMENT: OF MOLECULAR MECHA-
    NICS   By JOSEPH BAYMA, S J , Professor of Philosophy,
    Stonyhurst College. Demy 8vo cloth. 10* 6d

Beasley.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PLA,
    TRIGONOMETRY. With Examples By R D. BEASLEY,
    M A , Head Master of Grantham Grammar School. Fourth
    T ͏ᵗⁱᵒⁿ ͏ ᵈ ᵃⁿᵈ ᵉⁿˡᵃʳᵍᵉˢ C ͏ᵉⁿ 8vo cloth   3*, 6d

                (Hugh).— ELEMENTS OF PLANE
       .AOMETRY, for the use of the Junior Class of Mathematics
in the University of Glasgow. By HUGH BLACKBURN, M.A.,
Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. Globe
8vo. 1s. 6d.

Boole.—Works By G. BOOLE, D.C.L., F.R.S., Professor of
Mathematics in the Queen's University, Ireland.

A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. New and
Revised Edition. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. cloth
14s.

   "*A treatise incomparably superior to any other elementary book on
the same subject with which we are acquainted.*"—PHILOSOPHICAL
MAGAZINE.

A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Supple-
mentary Volume. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. cloth.
8s. 6d.

*This volume contains all that Professor Boole wrote since the purpose of
enlarging his treatise on Differential Equations.*

THE CALCULUS OF FINITE DIFFERENCES. Crown 8vo
cloth. 10s 6d. New Edition, revised by J. F. MOULTON.

   "*As an original book by one of the first mathematicians of the
age, it is out of all comparison with the mere second-hand compilations
which have hitherto been alone accessible to the student.*"—PHILOSOPHICAL
MAGAZINE.

Brook - Smith (J.)—ARITHMETIC IN THEORY AND
   PRACTICE. By J. BROOK-SMITH, M.A., LL.B., St. John's
   College, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law; one of the Masters of
   Cheltenham College. New Edition, revised. Complete, Crown
   8vo. 4s. 6d. Part I. 3s. 6d.

   "*A valuable Manual of Arithmetic of the Scientific kind. The best
we have seen.*"—LITERARY CHURCHMAN. "*An essentially practical
book, providing very definite help to candidates for almost every kind
of competitive examination.*"—BRITISH QUARTERLY.

Cambridge Senate-House Problems and Riders,
   WITH SOLUTIONS:—
      1848-1851.—PROBLEMS. By FERRERS and JACKSON. 8vo.
      cloth. 15s 6d.
      1848-1851.—RIDERS. By JAMESON. 8vo. cloth. 7s. 6d.
      1854.—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By WALTON and
      MACKENZIE. 8vo. cloth. 10s. 6d.
      1857.—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By CAMPION and
      WALTON. 8vo. cloth. 8s. 6d.
      1860.—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By WATSON and ROUTH
      Crown 8vo. cloth. 7s. 6d.
      1864.—PROBLEMS AND RIDERS. By WALTON and WIL-
      KINSON. 8vo. cloth. 10s. 6d.

CAMBRIDGE COURSE OF ELEMENTARY
PHILOSOPHY, for the Degree of B A   Originally
I C Snowball, M A, late Fellow of St. John's Coll
Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged, and adapted for the Middle
Class Examinations by Thomas Lund, B D , Late Fellow and
Lecturer of St John's College, Editor of Wood's Algebra, &c.
Crown 8vo cloth, 5*

CAMBRIDGE AND DUBLIN MATHEMATICAL JOURNAL
The Complete Work, in Nine Vols   8vo cloth   7l 4s
*Only a few copies remain on hand   Among the Contributors will
be found Sir W Thomson, Stokes, Adams, Boole, Sir W R Hamilton,
De Morgan, Cayley, Sylvester, Jellet, and other distinguished maths
e math sans*

Candler.—HELP TO ARITHMETIC   Designed for the use of
Schools   By H Candler, M A , Mathematical Master of
Uppingham School   Extra fcap 8vo   2s 6d

Cheyne—Works by C H W CHEYNE, M A , F R A S.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE PLANETARY
THEORY   With a Collection of Problems.   Second Edition.
Crown 8vo cloth   6s 6d

THE EARTH'S MOTION OF ROTATION   Crown 8vo
3s 6d

Childe.—THE SINGULAR PROPERTIES OF THE ELLIP
SOID AND ASSOCIATED SURFACES OF THE NTH
DEGREE   By the Rev G F Childe, M A , Author of
"Ray Surfaces, 'Related Caustics, &c,   8vo   10s 6d
*The object of this volume is to develop facul ities in the Elli g
and, further, to establish analogous properties in the unlimited congen it
teries of which this remarkable surface is a constituent*

Christie.—A COLLECTION OF ELEMENTARY TEST-
QUESTIONS IN PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS,
with Answers and Appendices on Synthetic Division, and on the
Solution of Numerical Equations by Horner's Method   By James
R. Christie, F R S , late First Mathematical Master at the
Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Crown 8vo cloth   8s 6d

Cuthbertson—EUCLIDIAN GEOMETRY   By Francis
Cuthbertson, M A , late Fellow of Corpus Christi College,
Cambridge , and Head Mathematical Master of Tiny of
London School   Extra fcap vo,   4s 6d

Dalton.—Works by the Rev T F Dalton, M A , Assistant
Master of Eton College.

RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ARITHMETIC   ON 18mo
18mo, cloth   2s 6d   Answers to the Examples a, D, 8 & 4?

RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ALGEBRA   Part School,

PROPERTIES OF CONIC SECTIONS PROVED GEOMETRICALLY   PART I   THE ELLIPSE with Problems   By the Rev H G DAY M A, Head Master of Sedbergh Grammar School   Crown 8vo   3s 6d

Dodgson —AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON DETERMINANTS with their Application to Simultaneous Linear Equations and Algebraical Geometry   By CHARLES L DODGSON M A   Student and Mathematical Lecturer of Christ Church Oxford   Small 4to cloth   10s 6d

A valuable addition to the treatises we possess on Modern Algebra —EDUCATIONAL TIMES

Drew —GEOMETRICAL TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS   By W H DREW M A St John's College Cambridge   Fourth Edition   Crown 8vo cloth   4s 6d

SOLUTIONS TO THE PROBLEMS IN DREW'S CONIC SECTIONS   Crown 8vo cloth   4s 6d

Earnshaw (S) — PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS   An Essay towards an entirely New Method of Integrating them.   By S EARNSHAW M A   St John's College, Cambridge   Crown 8vo   5s

Edgar (J H) and Pritchard (G S)—NOTE BOOK ON PRACTICAL SOLID OR DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY Containing Problems with help for Solutions   By J H EDGAR, M A   Lecturer on Mechanical Draw ng at the Royal School of Mines   and G S PRITCHARD late Master for Descriptive Geometry Royal Military Academy Woolw ch.   Second Edition, Revised and enlarged   Globe 8vo   3s

Ferrers —AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON TRILINEAR CO ORDINATES the Method of Reciprocal Polars, and the Theory of Projectors   By the Rev N M FERRERS, M.A , Fellow and Tutor of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge   Second Edition   Crown 8vo   6s 6d

Frost —Works by PERCIVAL FROST M A   formerly Fellow of St John's College   Cambridge , Mathematical Lecturer of King's College

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CURVE TRACING   By PERCIVAL FROST M A   8vo   12s

THE FIRST THREE SECTIONS OF NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA   With Notes and Illustrations   Also a collection of Problems, principally intended as Examples of Newton's Methods   By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A   Second Edition.   8vo cloth.   10s 6d

Frost and Wolstenholme —A TREATISE ON SOLID GEOMETRY   By PERCIVAL FROST, M A , and the Rev J WOLSTENHOLME, M A , Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Christ's College   8vo cloth   18s

Godfray.—Works by HUGH GODFRAY, M
Lecturer at Pembroke College, Cambridge

A TREATISE ON ASTRONOMY, for the Use of Colleges[ll]
Schools.   New Edition   8vo   cloth.   12s 6d
"A working book taking Astronomy in its proper place in math
matical sciences   A book which is not likely to be got up readily
gently —GUARDIAN

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE LUNAR THEORY,
with a Brief Sketch of the Problem up to the time of Newton.
Second Edition revised   Crown 8vo cloth   5s 6d
"As an elementary treatise and introduction to the subject, we think it
may justly claim to supersede all former ones —LONDON, EDIN AND
DUBLIN PHIL MAGAZINE .

Hemming—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE
DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS, for the
Use of Colleges and Schools   By G W HEMMING, M A,
Fellow of St John s College Cambridge   Second Edition, with
Corrections and Additions 8vo cloth   9s
" There is no book in common use from which is clear and exact a
knowledge of the principles of the Calculus can be so readily obtained" —
LITERARY GAZETTE

Jackson—GEOMETRICAL CONIC SECTIONS   An Elemen
tary Treatise in which the Conic Sections are defined as the Plane
Sections of a Cone and treated by the Method of Projection
By J STUART JACKSON, M A late Fellow of Gonville and Caius
College, Cambridge   4s 6d

Jellet (John H)—A TREATISE ON THE THEORY
FRICTION   By JOHN H JELLET, B.D., Senior Fello w of
Trinity College, Dublin, President of the Royal Irish Academy
8vo   8s 6d
" The work is one of great research, and will add much to the already
great reputation of its author" —SCOTSMAN

Jones and Cheyne.—ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES   Pro
gressively arranged   By the Rev C A JONES, M A, and C. H
CHEYNE, M A   F R A S, Mathematical Masters of Westminster
School   New Edition 18mo cloth. 2s 6d

Kelland and Tait—INTRODUCTION TO QUATER
NIONS with numerous examples. By P KELLAND, M A,
F R S   formerly Fellow of Queen s College, Cambridge and
P G TAIT, M A formerly Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cam
bridge , Professors in the Department of Mathematics in the
University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo, 7s 6d.

Kitchener.—A GEOMETRICAL NOTE BOOK, containing
Easy Problems in Geometrical Drawing preparatory to the Study
of Geometry   For the Use of Schools   By E. K KITCHENER,
M A   Mathematical Master at R by New Edition   4to 2s

COLLECTION OF PROBLEMS AND EXAM-
INATION MATHEMATICS With Answers. By H A.
MORGAN, M.A., Sadlerian and Mathematical Lecturer of Jesus
College, Cambridge Crown 8vo cloth 6s 6d

Newton's PRINCIPIA. Edited by Professor Sir W THOMSON
and Professor BLACKBURN 4to cloth 31s 6d
"*Finding*" say the Editors, "*that all the editions of the Principia are
now out of print, we have been induced to reprint Newton's last edition
[of 1726] without note or comment, only introducing the 'Corrigenda of
the old copy and correcting typographical errors*" The book is of a
handsome size with large type fine thick paper and cleanly cut figures,
and is the truly modern edition containing the whole of Newton's great work
"*Undoubtedly the finest edition of the text of the 'Principia' which has
yet appeared.*"—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

Parkinson.—Works by S PARKINSON D D , F R S , Tutor and
Praelector of St. John's College, Cambridge

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON MECHANICS For the
Use of the Junior Classes at the University and the Higher Classes
in Schools With a Collection of Examples. Fifth edition, revised.
Crown 8vo cloth. 9s 6d

A TREATISE ON OPTICS Third Edition, revised and enlarged.
Crown 8vo cloth 10s 6d

Phear.—ELEMENTARY HYDROSTATICS With Numerous
Examples By J B PHEAR, M A , Fellow and late Assistant
Tutor of Clare College, Cambridge Fourth Edition. Crown
8vo cloth. 5s 6d

Pratt.—A TREATISE ON ATTRACTIONS, LAPLACE'S
FUNCTIONS, AND THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH
By JOHN H PRATT, M A , Archdeacon of Calcutta, Author of
"The Mathematical Principles of Mechanical Philosophy" Fourth
Edition. Crown 8vo cloth 6s 6d

Puckle.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CONIC SEC-
TIONS AND ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY With Numerous
Examples and Hints for their Solution , especially designed for the
Use of Beginners. By G H PUCKLE, M A New Edition,
revised and enlarged Crown 8vo. cloth 7s 6d
"*Deserves an intimate acquaintance with the difficulties likely to be
felt, together with a singular aptitude in removing them*"—ATHENÆUM

Rawlinson.—ELEMENTARY STATICS, by the Rev. GEORGE
RAWLINSON, M A Edited by the Rev EDWARD STURGES, M A ,
of Emmanuel College, Cambridge, and late Professor of the Applied
Sciences, Elphinstone College, Bombay. Crown 8vo cloth 4s 6d.
"*Published under the authority of Her Majesty's Secretary of State for
India, for use in the Government Schools and Colleges in India.*"

Reynolds.—MODERN METHODS IN ELEMENTARY
GEOMETRY By E M REYNOLDS, M A., Mathematical
Master in Clifton College. Crown 8vo. 6s 6d.

Routh.—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON
  MICS OF THE SYSTEM OF RIGID BODIES.
  Numerous Examples By EDWARD JOHN ROUTH, M A
  Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St Peter's College, Cambridge.
  Examiner in the University of London. Second Edition, enlarged.
  Crown 8vo cloth   14s

WORKS

By the REV BARNARD SMITH, M A,

Rector of Glaston Rutland late Fellow and Senior Bursar
of St Peter's College Cambridge

ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA in their Principles and appli
  cation with numerous systematically arranged Examples taken
  from the Cambridge Examinations on Papers with especial reference
  to the Ordinary Examination for the B A Degree   Twelfth
  Edition carefully revised   Crown 8vo cloth   10s 6d
  "*To all those whose minds are sufficiently developed to comprehend the
  simplest mathematical reasoning and who have not yet thoroughly
  mastered the principles of Arithmetic and Algebra it is calculated to
  be of great advantage*—ATHENÆUM   *Mr Smith's work is a most
  useful publication   The rules are stated with great clearness The
  examples are well selected and worked out with just sufficient detail,
  without being encumbered by too minute explanations and there prevails
  throughout it that just proportion of theory and practice which is the
  crowning excellence of an elementary work*—DEAN PEACOCK

ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS   New Edition   Cro s 3/
  cloth   4s 6d Adapted from the Author's work on Arithc and
  and Alg bra
  "*Admirably adapted for instruction combining just sufficient theory
  with a large and well selected collection of exercises for practice*"—
  JOURNAL OF EDUCATION

A KEY TO THE ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS   Tenth
  Edition   Crown 8vo cloth   8s 6d

EXERCISES IN ARITHMETIC   With Answers   Crown 8vo,
  hmp cloth. 2s 6d
  Or sold separately, Part I 1s , Part II 1s , Answers, 6d

SCHOOL CLASS BOOK OF ARITHMETIC   18mo cloth. 3s.
  Or sold separately, Parts I and II 10d each   Part III 1s

KEYS TO SCHOOL CLASS BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. Com
  plete in one volume, 18mo cloth, 6s 6d , or Parts I , II , & the
  III , 2s 6d each.

SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC FOR NATIONAL AND
  ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS   18mo cloth. Or separately,
  Part I 2d , Part II 3d, Part III 7d   Answers, 6d

THE SAME, with Answers complete, 18mo cloth   1s 6d

rth—*continued*

...LLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC   18mo cloth.

EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC   18mo cloth
1s 6d   The same with Answers 18mo   1s 9d
KEY TO EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC
18mo cloth   4s 6d
THE METRIC SYSTEM OF ARITHMETIC, ITS PRINCIPLES
AND APPLICATION   with numerous Examples written
expressly for Standard V in National Schools. Fourth Edition
18mo cloth sewed   3d
CHART OF THE METRIC SYSTEM   on a Sheet size 42 in
by 34 in on Roller mounted and varnished price 3s 6d   Fourth
nd   10s

" *We do not remember that ever we have seen teaching by a chart more
happily carried out* —SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE
Also a Small Chart on a Card price 1d

EASY LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC combining Exercises in
Reading Writing Spelling, and Dictation   Part I for Standard
I in National Schools   Crown 8vo   9d
Diagrams for School room walls in preparation

*We should strongly advise everyone to study carefully Mr Barnard
Smith's Lessons in A thm etc, Writing and Spelling   A more excel
lent little work for a first introduction to knowledge cannot well be
written   Mr Smith s larger Text books on Arithmetic and Algebra are
already most favourably known and he has proved now that the difficulty
of writing a text book wh ch begins ab ovo is really surmountable   but we
should much mistaken if these little book has not cost its author more
  and mental labour than any of his more elaborate text-books
Th plan to combine arithmetical lessons with those in reading and spelling
is perfectly novel and it is worked out in accordance with the aims of our
National Schools   and we are convinced that its general introduction in
all elementary schools throughout the country will produce great educa
tional advantages* —WESTMINSTER REVIEW

THE METRIC SYSTEM OF ARITHMETIC   [*Nearly ready*

Snowball —THE ELEMENTS OF PLANE AND SPHERI
CAL TRIGONOMETRY, with the Construction and Use of
Tables of Logarithms   By J. C. SNOWBALL, M A Tenth Edition
Crown 8vo. cloth.   7s 6d

Tait and Steele —A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS OF
A PARTICLE   With numerous Examples   By Professor TAIT and
Mr STEELE   New Edition enlarged   Crown 8vo cloth   10s 6d

Tay.—ELEMENTARY MENSURATION FOR SCHOOLS
With numerous Examples   By SEPTIMUS TEBAY, B A, Head
Master of Queen Elizabeth s Grammar School, Rivington   Extra
fcap. 8vo   3s 6d

" *A very compact useful manual.*—SPECTATOR

WORKS

By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S.,

Of St. John's College, Cambridge

"Mr Todhunter is chiefly known to students of Mathematics as the author of a series of admirable mathematical text books which possess the rare qualities of being clear in style and absolutely free from mistakes, typographical or other —SATURDAY REVIEW

THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID For the Use of Colleges and Schools New Edition 18mo cloth 3s 6d

MENSURATION FOR BEGINNERS With numerous Examples. New Edition 18mo cloth 2s 6d

"For simplicity and clearness of arrangement it is unsurpassed by any text book on the subject which has come under our notice —EDUCA-TIONAL TIMES

ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo cloth 2s 6d

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS Crown 8vo cloth. 6s 6d

TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS With numerous Examples. New Edition 18mo cloth 2s 6d

KEY TO TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS Crown 8vo. 8s 6d

MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS With numerous Examples. New Edition 18mo cloth. 4s 6d

ALGEBRA For the Use of Colleges and Schools Sixth Edition, containing two new Chapters and Three Hundred miscellaneous Examples Crown 8vo cloth. 7s 6d

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR THE USE OF COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS Crown 8vo 10s 6d

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF EQUATIONS Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. cloth. 7s 6d

"A thoroughly trustworthy complete, and yet not too elaborate treatise" PHILOSOPHICAL MAGAZINE.

PLANE TRIGONOMETRY For Schools and Colleges. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo cloth. 5s

A TREATISE ON SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. cloth. 4s 6d

"For educational purposes this work seems to be superior to any other on the subject —CRITIC.

PLANE CO-ORDINATE GEOMETRY, as applied to the Straight Line and the Conic Sections With numerous Examples Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. cloth. 7s 6d

I.)—continued

... ON THE DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS With
numerous Examples. Sixth Edition. Crown 8vo cloth 10s 6d
"_Has already taken its place as the text book on that subject_"—
PHILOSOPHICAL MAGAZINE.

A TREATISE ON THE INTEGRAL CALCULUS AND ITS
APPLICATIONS With numerous Examples. Fourth Edition,
revised and enlarged Crown 8vo cloth 10s 6d

EXAMPLES OF ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY OF THREE
DIMENSIONS Third Edition, revised. Crown 8vo cloth 4s

A TREATISE ON ANALYTICAL STATICS With numerous
Examples. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged Crown 8vo
cloth 10s 6d

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF
PROBABILITY from the time of Pascal to that of Laplace
8vo 18s

RESEARCHES IN THE CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS,
principally on the Theory of Discontinuous Solutions. An Essay
to which the Adams Prize was awarded in the University of Cam
bridge in 1871 8vo 6s

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORIES OF
ATTRACTION AND THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH,
from the time of Newton to that of Laplace 2 vols 8vo 24s
"_Such histories are at present more valuable than original work_
They at once enable the Mathematician to make himself master of all that
is done on the subject and also give him a clue to the right method
of attacking the subject in future by showing him the paths by which
advance has been made in the past   It is such unmingled satisfaction
that we on this special subject as his special subject by one whose cast of
mind and self culture have made him one of the most accurate as he cer
tainly is the most learned of Cambridge Mathematicians—SATURDAY
REVIEW

Wilson (J. M.)—ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY Books
I New Edition, following the Subjects of Euclid s first Four Books.
New Edition, following the Syllabus of the Geometrical Associa
tion By J M WILSON, M.A, late Fellow of St. John's Col
lege, Cambridge, and Mathematical Master of Rugby School
Extra fcap 8vo 3s 6d

SOLID GEOMETRY AND CONIC SECTIONS With Appen
dices on Transversals and Harmonic Division. For the use of
Schools. By J M WILSON, M.A Second Edition. Extra fcap
8vo 3s 6d

Wilson (W. P.)—A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS By
W. P. WILSON, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge,

and Professor of Mathematics in Queen's College
9s 6d
"*This treatise supplies a great educational need*"
Times.

Wolstenholme.— A BOOK OF MATH
PROBLEMS on Subjects included in the C
By JOSEPH WOLSTENHOLME, Fellow of Christ
time Fellow of St John's College, and lately L
matics at Christ's College   Crown 8vo cloth.
"*Judicious, symmetrical, and well arranged*"—Gu

SCIENCE.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS.

IT is the intention of the Publishers to produce a com-
plete series of Scientific Manuals, affording full and ac-
curate elementary information, conveyed in clear and
lucid English   The authors are well known as among
the foremost men of their several departments, and their
names form a ready guarantee for the high character of the
books   Subjoined is a list of those Manuals that have
already appeared, with a short account of each   Others
are in active preparation, and the whole will const +   -
standard series specially adapted to the requirements c
ginners, whether for private study or for school instruction.

ASTRONOMY, by the Astronomer Royal.
POPULAR ASTRONOMY   With Illustrations   By Sir G. B.,
AIRY, K C B , Astronomer Royal   New Edition   18mo
cloth   4s 6d
Six lectures intended " to explain to intelligent persons the general
on which the instruments of the Observatory are constructed, and the
principles on which the observations man with these instruments are
treated for deduction of the distances and weights of the bodies of the
Solar System

ASTRONOMY.
ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY   With
Coloured Diagram of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars,
Nebulæ and numerous Illustrations   By J NORMAN LOCK
F R S   New Edit on   18mo   5s 6d
Full, clear, sound, and worthy of attention, not only as a popular expo
sition, but as a scientific index   —ATHENÆUM   The most fasc
nature   ry books on the subject —NONCONFORMIST

Class-Books—continued

QUESTIONS ON LOCKYER'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS
IN ASTRONOMY For the Use of Schools By JOHN FORBES
ROBERTSON 18mo cloth limp 1s 6d

PHYSIOLOGY

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY With
numerous Illustrations By T H HUXLEY F R S Professor
of Natural History in the Royal School of Mines. New Edition.
18mo cloth 4s 6d

"*Pure gold throughout*"—GUARDIAN   *Unquestionably the clearest
and most complete elementary treatise on this subject that we possess in
any language*—WESTMINSTER REVIEW

QUESTIONS ON HUXLEY'S PHYSIOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS
By T ALCOCK M D   18mo   1s 6d

BOTANY

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY BOTANY   By D OLIVER,
F R S F L S   Professor of Botany in University College London
With nearly Two Hundred Illustrations. New Edition 18mo
cloth. 4s 6d

CHEMISTRY

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY INORGANIC
AND ORGANIC   By HENRY E ROSCOE, F R S Professor of
Chemistry in Owens College Manchester With numerous Illus
trations and Chromo Litho of the Solar Spectrum and of the Al
kalies and Alkali ne Earths   New Edition   18mo cloth. 4s 6d

*'A standard general text book of deserves to take a leading place —
ATOR   We unhesitatingly pronounce it the best of all our
elementary treatises on Chemistry*—MEDICAL TIMES

POLITICAL ECONOMY

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS   By MILLICENT
G FAWCETT   New Edition   18mo   2s 6d

'Clear compact and comprehensive—DAILY NEWS   *'The relations
of capital and labour have never been more simply or more clearly
explained*—CONTEMPORARY REVIEW

LOGIC

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN LOGIC   Deductive and Induc
tive with copious Questions and Examples, and a Vocabulary of
Logical Terms   By W STANLEY JEVONS, M A , Professor of Logic
in Owens College, Manchester. New Edition 18mo   3s 6d

'Nothing can be better for a school-book—GUARDIAN.   *At
once simple alike rough interesting and scientific*—ATHENÆUM

PHYSICS

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS   By BALFOUR
STEWART, F R S , Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens
College Manchester With   ntrations and   nume-

Elementary Class-Books—*continued*

liths of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ. 6*s*. 10*s*.
18mo   4*s* 6*d*
" The basic *ideal of a scientific text-book, clear, accurate, and thorough.*
EDUCATIONAL TIMES

PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY.

THE OWENS COLLEGE JUNIOR COURSE OF PRAC-
TICAL CHEMISTRY   By FRANCIS JONES, Chemical Master
in the Grammar School, Manchester   With Preface by Professor
ROSCOE   With Illustrations   New Edition   18mo   2*s* 6*d*

ANATOMY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY ANATOMY   By ST. GEORGE
MIVART   F R S   Lecturer in Comparative Anatomy at St
Hospital   With upwards of 400 Illustrations   18mo   6*s* 6*d*
" *It may be questioned whether any other work on Anatomy contains
in the compass so proportionately great a mass of information* —*Lancet*
" *The work is excellent and should be in the hands of every student of
human anatomy* —MEDICAL TIMES

STEAM —AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE   By JOHN PERRY,
Bachelor of Engineering Whitworth Scholar etc   late Lecturer in
Physics at Clifton College   With numerous Woodcuts and
Numerical Examples and Exercises.   18mo   4*s* 6*d*

MANUALS FOR STUDENTS.

Flower (W. H)—AN INTRODUCTION TO THE OSTE-
OLOGY OF THE MAMMALIA   Being the substance of
the Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons
of England in 1870   By W H FLOWER, F R S, F R   etc,
Hunterian Professor of Comparative Anatomy and Physiology.
With numerous Illustrations.   Globe 8vo   7*s* 6*d*

Hooker (Dr)—THE STUDENT'S FLORA OF THE
BRITISH ISLANDS   By J D HOOKER, C.B., F R S,
M.D   D.C.L., President of the Royal Society.   New Edition
10*s* 6*d*
" *Cannot fail to perfectly fulfil the purpose for which it is intended.*"—
LAND AND WATER.—"*Containing the fullest and most complete
manual of the kind that has yet appeared* —PALL MALL GAZETTE

Oliver (Professor)—FIRST BOOK OF INDIAN BOTANY
By DANIEL OLIVER   F R S , F L S , Keeper of the Herbarium
and Library of the Royal Gardens, Kew, and Professor of Botany
in University College, London.   With numerous Illustrations.
Extra fcap 8vo.   6*s* 6*d*
" *It contains a well-digested summary of all essential knowledge pertain-
ing to Indian botany, wrought out in a scientific way, with all the accuracy
of scientific scholarship*   —*INDIA MAIL.*"
Offers with be the Mammals will follow

NATURE SERIES.

THE SPECTROSCOPE AND ITS APPLICATIONS By J NORMAN LOCKYER, F R S.' With Coloured Plate and numerous illustrations. Second Edition Crown 8vo 3s 6d

THE ORIGIN AND METAMORPHOSES OF INSECTS By Sir JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F R.S With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition Crown 8vo. 3s 6d.

We can most cordially recommend it to young naturalists"—ATHENÆUM

THE BIRTH OF CHEMISTRY By G F RODWELL, F R A S, F C S, Science Master in Marlborough College With numerous illustrations. Crown 8vo 3s 6d.

... we can confidently recommend it to all Students of Chemistry—CHEMICAL NEWS.

THE TRANSIT OF VENUS By G FORBES, M A, Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Andersonian University, Glasgow Illustrated Crown 8vo 3s 6d.

Other volumes to follow

Ball (R. S., A.M.)—EXPERIMENTAL MECHANICS A Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Science for Ireland By R S BALL, A.M., Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics in the Royal College of Science for Ireland Royal 8vo. 16s

——THE CHILDHOOD OF THE WORLD a Simple Account of Men in Early Times. By EDWARD CLODD, F.R.A.S. Third Edition Globe 8vo 3s Also a Special Edition for Schools 18mo. 1s.

PROFESSOR MAX MÜLLER, *in a letter to the Author, says "I read your book with great pleasure. I have no doubt it will do good, and I hope you will continue your work Nothing spoils our temper so much as having to unlearn in youth, manhood, and even old age, so many things which we were taught as children. A book like yours will prepare a far better lot in the child's grandf and I was delighted to have it to read to my children"*

Cooke (Josiah P., Jun)—FIRST PRINCIPLES OF CHEMICAL PHILOSOPHY By JOSIAH P. COOKE Jun, Erving Professor of Chemistry and Mineralogy in Harvard College Third Edition, Revised and Corrected. Crown 8vo. 12s

Euting (J. E.)—A SERIES OF CHEMICAL PROBLEMS, for use in Colleges and Schools Adapted for the preparation of Students for the Government, Science, and Society of Arts Examinations. With a Preface by HENRY ROSCOE. New Edition, cloth 1s Key 1s

SCIENCE PRIMERS FOR ELEM.... \\
SCHOOLS

The necessity of commencing the teaching of Science in Schools at an early stage of the pupil's course has now become generally acknowledged and is enforced in all Schools under Government inspection. For the purpose of facilitating the introduction of Science Teaching into Elementary Schools Messrs Macmillan are now publishing a New Series of Science Primers under the joint Editorship of Professors HUXLEY, ROSCOE, and BALFOUR STEWART. The object of these Primers is to convey information in such a manner as to make it both intelligible and useful to pupils in the most elementary classes. They are clearly printed in good paper and illustrated wherever they are necessary to the proper understanding of the text. The following are just published

PRIMER OF CHEMISTRY By H. E ROSCOE Professor of Chemistry in Owens College, Manchester 18mo. 1s Third Edition.

PRIMER OF PHYSICS By BALFOUR STEWART Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College, Manchester, 18mo 1s Third Edition

PRIMER OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY By ARCHIBALD GEIKIE F R S Murchison Professor of Geology and Mineralogy at Edinburgh Second Ed t on 18mo 1s

Everyone ought to know something about the air we breathe the earth we live upon and about the creatures between them and let s work this author makes to show what sort of questions says just about some of the chief parts of the book of nature, and especially about two of them—the Air and the Earth The 4 vagms of the book are as follows — The Shape of the Earth—Day and Night—The Air—The Circulation of Water on the Land—The Sea—The Inside of the Earth.

PRIMER OF GEOLOGY By PROFESSOR GEIKIE, F R S With numerous Illustrations Second Edition. 18mo. cloth 1s

In these Primers the authors have aimed not so much to give information as to endeavour to discipline the mind in a way which has not hitherto been customary, by bringing it into immediate contact with Nature herself For this purpose a series of simple experiments to be performed by the teacher, has been devised looking up to the capacity of each Science Thus the power of observation on the pupil will be awakened while strengthened Esc Mankind is cogently illustrated, and depended are like of all the necessary appropriate, with prompt directions as to how they may be observed Professor Huxley's introductory volume has been delayed through the illness of the author, but it is now expected to appear very shortly They are wonderfully clear and lucid in their instruction, simple in style, and admirable in their...

…hers—continued

PRIMER OF PHYSIOLOGY By MICHAEL FOSTER, M D ,
F.R.S With numerous Illustrations 18mo

In preparation

INTRODUCTORY By PROFESSOR HUXLEY
PRIMER ON BOTANY By Dr HOOKER, C.B , F R S
PRIMER OF ASTRONOMY By J NORMAN LOCKYER, F R S
&c &c

MISCELLANEOUS.

———A SHAKESPEARIAN GRAMMAR An Attempt to
illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern
English. By the Rev E A ABBOTT M A , Head Master of the
City of London School For the Use of Schools New and
Enlarged Edition Extra fcap 8vo 6s
*"A critical inquiry conducted with great skill and knowledge, and
with all the appliances of modern philology We venture to believe
that those who consider themselves most proficient as Shakespearians
will find something to learn from its pages*—PALL MALL GAZETTE.
*"Valuable not only as an aid to the critical study of Shakespeare but
as tending to familiarise the reader with Elizabethan English in
general"*—ATHENÆUM

Barker.—FIRST LESSONS IN THE PRINCIPLES OF
COOKING By LADY BARKER 18mo 1s
*" An unpretending but invaluable little work The plan is
a plan us it complicates and simplicity it is hardly possible that
an, one who can read at all can fail to understand the practical lessons
bread and beef, fish and vegetables while the explanation of the chemical
composition of our food must be intelligible to all who possess sufficient
education to follow the argument on which the finest possible technical
terms are used "*—SPECTATOR

Berners.—FIRST LESSONS ON HEALTH By J BER
NERS 18mo 1s Third Edition

Besant.—STUDIES IN EARLY FRENCH POETRY By
WALTER BESANT, M A Crown 8vo 8s 6d
*"In the moderately used volume he has contrived to introduce us to the
very best, if not to all of the early French poets*—ATHENÆUM *"In
dustry, the insight of a scholar, and a genuine enthusiasm for his subject,
combine to make it of very considerable value*—SPECTATOR

Breymann.—A FRENCH GRAMMAR BASED ON PHI
LOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES By HERMANN BREYMANN,
Ph.D., Lecturer in French Language and Literature at Owens
College, Manchester Extra fcap 8vo 4s 6d
"We dismiss the work with every expression of satisfaction It can

study of French a means towards the higher culture—
TIMES   *A good sound valuable philological grammar* ... the
presents the pupil by his method and by detail with an encouragement
of information about French not usually to be found in grammars. ... the
the information is all of it of real practical value to the student who
really wants to know French well and to understand it spirit   ... there
the end a long chapter called *Resumé and Illustrations* ... an
exceedingly interesting and valuable dissertation upon French philo-
logy—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE

Calderwood—HANDBOOK OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY
By the Rev HENRY CALDERWOOD LL D   Professor of Moral
Philosophy University of Edinburgh   Second Edition   Price ...
8vo   6
A compact and useful work   will be an assistance to many
students outside the author's own University—GUARDIAN

Delamotte—A BEGINNER S DRAWING BOOK. By D. H.
DELAMOTTE, F S A \ Progress very arranged   New Edition,
improved. Crown 8vo   4/ 6d
We have seen and examined a great many drawing books, but the one
before us trikes us as being the best of them all—ILLUSTRATED
TIMES. "A concise simple and thoroughly practical work." The
letterpress is throughout intelligible and to the point—GUARDIAN

Goldsmith—THE TRAVELLER or a Prospect of Society
and THE DESERTED VILLAGE   By OLIVER GOLDSMITH
With Notes Philological and Explanatory by J W HALES, M A
Crown 8vo.   6d

Green—A HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE. ... ...
Rev. J R GREEN, M.A   For the use of Colleges and Schools
Crown 8vo

Hales—LONGER ENGLISH POEMS with Notes Philological
and Explanatory and an Introduction on the Teaching of English.
Chiefly for use in Schools   Ed ted by J W HALES, M A, late
Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Christ's College Cambridge,
Lecturer in English Literature and Classical Composition at King's
College School, London, &c &c   Extra fcap, 8vo   4s 6d

Helfenstein (James)—A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR
OF THE TEUTONIC LANGUAGES. Being at the same
time a Historical Grammar of the English Language, and comprising
Gothic, Anglo-Saxon, Early English, Modern English, Icelandic
(Old Norse) Danish Swedish Old High German, Middle High
German, Modern German, Old Saxon, Old Frisian, and Dutch.
By JAMES HELFENSTEIN, Ph.D. 8vo.   16s

Hole—A GENEALOGICAL STEMMA OF THE KINGS OF
ENGLAND AND FRANCE   By the Rev C HOLE. On
a Sheet   1s

SHAKESPEARE'S "TEMPEST" With Glossarial and Explanatory Notes. By the Rev J M JEPHSON Second Edition. 18mo 1s

Kington-Oliphant.—THE SOURCES OF STANDARD ENGLISH By J KINGTON OLIPHANT Extra fcap 8vo 6s

Mr Oliphant's book is to our mind, one of the ablest and most scholarly contributions to our standard English we have seen for many years. ... The arrangement of the work and its indices make it as valuable as a work of reference and as valuable to study and to store unless ... in the memory —SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE Comes nearer to a history of the English language than anything that we have seen ... no such a history could be written without confusion and ob ... one? —SATURDAY REVIEW

Martin.—THE POET'S HOUR Poetry Selected and Arranged for Children By FRANCES MARTIN Second Edition 18mo cloth 2s 6d

Nearly 200 Poems selected from the best Poets ancient and modern, and intended mainly for children between the ages of eight and twelve

SPRING TIME WITH THE POETS Poetry selected by FRANCES MARTIN Second Edition 18mo 3s 6d

Including mainly for girls and boys between the ages of twelve and seven teen

Masson (Gustave).—A COMPENDIOUS DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE (French English and English French) Followed by a List of the Principal Diverging Deriva tions and preceded by Chronological and Historical Tables By GUSTAVE MASSON, Assistant-Master and Librarian Harrow School. Square half bound, 6s

This ... though cast in the same form as other dictionaries has several distinctive features which increase its value for the student In the French English part, etymology is founded on the researches of Henri ... Scheler, a ... Brachet are given Then at the end of the volume will be very useful to those who are interested in tracing the various developments of original Latin words But that which makes it almost indispensable to students of the political and literary history of France, is to be found at the beginning of the work where Mr Masson has drawn up clear and complete tables of historical events, varied to coincident with the developments of literature and lan guage, between the death of Charlemagne 814 A.D and that of Louis Philippe 1848. They take ... illustrated by remarks on the various ... made, of which the works published were the expression Appended ... a list of the principal Chronicles and Memoirs on the History of France which have appeared up to the present time, the English ... with Calendar, Commentaries on the Congress and a Chronological ... list of all the principal French News papers published during the Revolution ... P ...

Morris—Works by the Rev R Morris, LL D

English Language and Literature in King's College School

HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE, comprising Chapters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word formation. Third Edition Extra fcap 8vo 6s

'*It makes an era in the study of the English tongue*—SATURDAY REVIEW '*He has done his work with a fulness and completeness that leave nothing to be desire'*—NONCONFORMIST "*A genuine and sound book*—ATHENÆUM

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR, Containing Accidence and Word formation. 18mo 2s 6d

Oppen—FRENCH READER For the Use of Colleges and Schools. Containing a graduated Selection from modern Authors in Prose and Verse, and copious Notes, chiefly Etymological By EDWARD A OPPEN Fcap 8vo cloth 4s 6d

Pylodet—NEW GUIDE TO GERMAN CONVERSATION containing an Alphabetical List of nearly 800 Familiar Words and Idioms, Orthographic and Sound and the same Meaning in both Languages, ... Intended as Vade mecum, or Words in familiar use . . . . of German Conversation By L Pylodet New Edition 2s 6d

Sonnenschein and **Meiklejohn**.—THE ENGLISH METHOD OF TEACHING TO READ By A SONNENSCHEIN and J M D MEIKLEJOHN, M A Fcap 8vo COMPRISING

THE NURSERY BOOK, containing all the Two Letter Words in the Language 1d (Also in Large Type on Sheets for School Walls 5s)

THE FIRST COURSE, consisting of Short Vowels with Single Consonants 3d

THE SECOND COURSE, consisting of Combinations and Bridges, consisting of Short Vowels with Double Consonants. 4d

THE THIRD AND FOURTH COURSES, consisting of Long Vowels, and all the Double Vowels in the Language 6d

"*These are admirable books because they are constructed on a principle, and that the simplest principle on which it is possible to learn to read*"*English*—SPECTATOR

Taylor.—WORDS AND PLACES, or, Etymological Illustrations of History, Ethnology, and Geography By the Rev ISAAC TAYLOR M A Third and cheaper Edition, revised and compressed With Maps Globe 8vo 6s

Already been adopted by many teachers, and prescribed as a text book as the Text-book for Higher Examinations . . . .

works by EDWARD THRING, M A , Head Master of
Uppingham

THE ELEMENTS OF GRAMMAR TAUGHT IN ENGLISH,
with Questions   Fourth Edition 18mo 2s

THE CHILD S GRAMMAR Being the Substance of "The
Elements of Grammar taught in English,' adapted for the Use of
Junior Classes A New Edition. 18mo 1s

SCHOOL SONGS A Collection of Songs for Schools With the
Music arranged for four Voices Edited by the Rev E THRING
and H RICCIUS Folio 7s 6d

Trench (Archbishop)—HOUSEHOLD BOOK OF ENG
LISH POETRY Selected and Arranged with Notes, by
C TRENCH D D , Archbishop of Dublin Extra fcap 8vo
5s 6d Second Edition
"*The Archbishop has conferred in this delightful volume an impor
tant gift on the whole English speaking population of the world*—PALL
MALL GAZETTE

ON THE STUDY OF WORDS Lectures addressed (originally)
to the Pupils at the Diocesan Training School, Winchester
Fourteenth Edition revised Fcap 8vo 4s 6d

ENGLISH, PAST AND PRESENT Eighth Edition, revised
and improved Fcap 8vo 4s 6d

A SELECT GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH WORDS used formerly
in Senses Different from their Present Fourth Edition, enlarged
Fcap 8vo 4s 6d

than (C M)—A SHILLING BOOK OF WORDS
FROM THE POETS By C M VAUGHAN 18mo cloth

Whitney —Works by WILLIAM D WHITNEY Professor of San
skrit and Indo . . . .
. . . .
. . . .
. . German . . . .

A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR Crown 8vo 6s

A GERMAN READER IN PROSE AND VERSE, with Notes and
Vocabulary Crown 8vo 7s 6d

Yonge (Charlotte M.)—THE ABRIDGED BOOK OF
GOLDEN DEEDS A Reading Book for Schools and General
Readers By the Author of ' The Heir of Redclyffe." 18mo
cloth 1s

HISTORY.

Freeman (Edward A)—OLD ENGLISH HISTORY
By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D C L, late Fellow of Trinity
College, Oxford With Five Coloured Maps Third Edition

"*I have, I hope,*" *the author says,* "*shown that at a gl--
each children, from the very first, to distinguish true history with --
--gend and from vulgar invention, and also to understand the natur-- of
historical authorities and to weigh one statement against another I have
throughout striven to connect the history of England with the general
history of civilised Europe, and I have especially tried to make the
book serve as an incentive to a more accurate study of historical
geography*" *In the present edition the whole has been carefully revised,
and such improvements as suggested themselves have been introduced.*
"*The book indeed is full of instruction and interest to students of all
ages, and he must be a well informed man indeed who will not rise from
its perusal with clearer and more accurate ideas of a too much neglected
portion of English History* —SPECTATOR.

Historical Course for Schools—Edited by EDWARD
A FREEMAN, D C L , late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.
The object of the present series is to put forth clear and correct views
of history in simple language and in the smallest space and cheapest
form in which it could be done   It is meant in the first place for
Schools , but it is often found that a book for schools proves useful
for other readers as well and it is hoped that this may be the case
with the little books the first instalment of which is now given to
the world The General Sketch will be followed by a series of
special histories of particular countries which will take for granted
the main principles laid down in the General Sketch   In every case
the results of the latest historical research will be given in as simple
a form as may be, and the several numbers of the series will all be
so far under the supervision of the Editor as to secure gener--
curacy of statement and a general harmony of plan and senti--
but each book will be the original work of its author, who
be responsible for his own treatment of smaller details.
    *The first volume is meant to be introductory to the whole course. It
is intended to give, as its name implies a general sketch of the history
of the civilised world, that is, of Europe, and of the lands which have drawn
their civilisation from Europe Its object is to trace out the general rela-
tions of different periods and different countries to one another, without
--ong minutely into the affairs of any particular country   That short
object of the first volume is, for without clear notions of general history,
the history of particular countries can never be rightly understood The
narrative extends from the earliest monuments of the Aryan peoples, d--n
to the latest events both on the Eastern and Western Continents. The
book consists of seventeen moderately sized chapters, each chapter being
divided into a number of short numbered paragraphs, each with a title
prefixed clearly indicative of the subject of the paragraph*

I GENERAL SKETCH of EUROPEAN HISTORY By
    EDWARD A FREEMAN, D C L   Third Edition 18mo cloth
    3/ 6d.
    "*It supplies the great want of a good foundation for historical teach-*

... Course for Schools—*continued.*

es used *in a way that promises much for the volumes that are yet to appear.*"—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

II. HISTORY OF ENGLAND   By EDITH THOMPSON.   Fourth
   Edition   18mo   2s 6d
   "*Freedom from prejudice, simplicity of style, and accuracy of statement, are the characteristics of this little volume   It is a trustworthy text book and likely to be generally serviceable in schools*"—PALL MALL GAZETTE
   "*Upon the whole, this manual is the best sketch of English history for the use of young people we have yet met with*"—ATHENÆUM

III   HISTORY OF SCOTLAND   By MARGARET MACARTHUR
   18mo,   2s
   An excellent summary, unimpeachable as to facts, and putting them in the clearest and most impartial light attainable   "*Miss Macarthur has performed her task with admirable care, clearness, and fulness, and we have now for the first time a really good School History of Scotland*"—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

IV   HISTORY OF ITALY   By the Rev W HUNT, M A   18mo
   3s
   "*It possesses the same solid merit as its predecessors   the same scrupulous care about fidelity in details   It is distinguished too, by information on art, architecture, and social politics, in which the writer's grasp is seen by the firmness and clearness of his touch*"—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

V   HISTORY OF GERMANY   By J SIME, M A   18mo   3s
   "*A remarkably clear and impressive History of Germany   Its great merit was rarely is fit as neutral figures, and the smaller events are carefully, it, not only subordinate and subservient, but most skilfully woven into the texture of the historical tapestry presented to the eye*"—STANDARD

The following will shortly be issued :—

   FRANCE.   By the Rev J R GREEN, M A
   GREECE   By ANNAN BRYCE, B A
   AMERICA   By JOHN A DOYLE

'onge (Charlotte M.)—A PARALLEL HISTORY OF
   FRANCE AND ENGLAND   consisting of Outlines and Dates
   By CHARLOTTE M YONGE, Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe,"
   "Cameos of English History," &c &c   Oblong 4to   3s 6d
   "*We can imagine few more really advantageous courses of historical study for a young mind than going carefully and steadily through Miss Yonge's excellent little book.*"—EDUCATIONAL TIMES

   —MEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY   From Rollo to Edward
   I.   By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe."   Extra fcap
   8vo.   Second edition, enlarged.   5s 6d
   A book for young people just beyond the elementary histories of England, and able to enter in some degree into the real spirit of events, and to be

Yonge (Charlotte M)—*continued*
by details, we have loving pictures, faithful, vivid, and striking.
NONCONFORMIST

A SECOND SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY.
  THE WARS IN FRANCE   Second Edition   Extra fcap 8vo   6s
" *Though mainly intended for young readers they will, if set methodi-*
cally be found very acceptable to those of more mature years, and the
life and reality imparted to the dry bones of history cannot fail to be
attractive to readers of every age —JOHN BULL

EUROPEAN HISTORY   Narrated in a Series of Historical Selec-
  tions from the Best Authorities   Edited and arranged by E M
  SEWELL and C M YONGE   First Series 1003—1154   Third
  Edition   Crown 8vo   6s   Second Series 1088—1228
  8vo   6s   Second Edition
" *We know of scarcely any thing which is so likely to raise to a higher*
level the average standard of English education —GUARDIAN

DIVINITY.

** For other Works by these Authors see THEOLOGICAL CATALOGUE

Abbott (Rev. E. A.)—BIBLE LESSONS   By the Rev
  E A ABBOTT M A , Head Master of the City of London School
  Second Edition   Crown 8vo   4s 6d
" *Wise, suggestive and really profound instruction into religious thought* "
—GUARDIAN   " *I think nobody could read them without being both the*
better for them himself and being also able to see how this difficult chap-
imparting a sound religious education may be effected —BISHOP OF
DAVID'S AT ABERGWILLY

Arnold — A BIBLE READING   FOR SCHOOLS   The
  GREAT PROPHECY OF ISRAEL'S RESTORATION (Isaiah, Chapters
  40—66)   Arranged and Edited for Young Learners   By MATT
  THEW ARNOLD   D C L , formerly Professor of Poetry in the
  University of Oxford, and Fellow of Oriel   Third Edition   18mo
  cloth   1s
" *There can be no doubt that it will be found excellently calculated to*
further instruction in Biblical literature in any school into which it may
be introduced   and we can safely say that whatever school uses the book
it will enable its pupils to understand Isaiah a great advantage compared
with other establishments which do not avail themselves of it —TIMES
' *Mr Arnold has done the greatest possible service to the public   We never*
read any translation of Isaiah which quiterfered to Bible with the musical
rhythm and associations of our English Bible translation while so
so much to display the musing links in the connection of the text —
SPECTATOR

Golden Treasury Psalter.—Students' Edition   Being an
  Edition of "The Psalms Chronologically Arranged, by Four

——A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH.
dle Age. From Gregory the Great to the Excommunication
Luther. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor
Modern History in the University of Oxford. With Four Maps
structed for the work by A. KEITH JOHNSTON. Third Edition.
vn 8vo. 10s. 6d.
   is edition Professor Stubbs has carefully revised both text and
 , making such corrections of facts, dates, and the like as the results
recent research warrant. The doctrinal, historical, and generally
ulative views of the late author have been preserved intact. "As a
nual for the student of ecclesiastical history, in the Middle Ages, we
 no English work which can be compared to Mr. Hardwick's
       GUARDIAN

ISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH DURING THE
   REFORMATION. By ARCHDEACON HARDWICK. Third
   Edition. Edited by Professor STUBBS. Crown 8vo.   10s. 6d.

clear.—Works by the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D., Head
   Master of King's College School.

CLASS-BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. Eighth
   Edition, with Four Maps. 18mo cloth   4s. 6d.
   A careful and elaborate though brief compendium of all that modern
   ch has done for the illustration of the Old Testament. We know
   work which contains so much important information in so small
   size."—BRITISH QUARTERLY REVIEW.

ASS-BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, including
   Connexion of the Old and New Testament. With Four Maps.
   ighth Edition   18mo cloth.   5s. 6d.
   A singularly clear and orderly arrangement of the Sacred Story.
   s work is ably and completely done."—ATHENÆUM.

SHILLING BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY,
   for National and Elementary Schools   With Map. 18mo.
   cloth. New Edition

SHILLING BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY,
   r National and Elementary Schools   With Map. 18mo.
   h. New Edition
   orks have been carefully abridged from the author's larger

-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF
   GLAND. Third and Cheaper Edition. 18mo. cloth   1s. 6d.
   st indeed the work of a scholar and divine, and as such, though
   ly ample, is also extremely instructive. There are few clergy-
   to would not find it useful in preparing candidates for Confir-
   on there are not a few who would find it useful to themselves
   —LITERARY CHURCHMAN.

ST CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE
   URCH OF ENGLAND, with Scripture Proofs.   To our

Maclear—*continued.*

A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION FOR CONFIRMATIO
    FIRST COMMUNION. With Prayers and Devotions.
    32mo. cloth extra, red edges. 2*s.*
  "*It is earnest, orthodox, and affectionate in tone. The for-
    examination is particularly good*" JOHN BULL

Maurice.—THE LORD'S PRAYER, THE CREED,
    THE COMMANDMENTS. A Manual for Parents and Mi-
    nisters. To which is added the Order of the Scriptures. By
    Rev. F. DENISON MAURICE, M.A., Professor of Moral Philoso-
    phy in the University of Cambridge. 18mo. cloth limp. 1*s.*

Procter.—A HISTORY OF THE BOOK OF CO
    PRAYER, with a Rationale of its Offices. By FRANCIS PRO.
    M.A. Eleventh Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown
    10*s. 6d.*
  "*We admire the author's diligence, and bear willing testimony to
    extent and accuracy of his reading. The organs of every part of
    Prayer Book has been diligently investigated, and there are few points
    of facts connected with it which are not either sufficiently explained, or
    referred to that persons interested may work out the truth for themselves.*
    —ATHENÆUM.

Procter and Maclear.—AN ELEMENTARY IN-
    DUCTION TO THE BOOK OF COMMON PR
    Re-arranged and supplemented by an Explanation of the M
    and Evening Prayer and the Litany. By the Rev. F. J.
    and the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR. New Edition. 18mo. 2*s.*

Psalms of David Chronologically Arranged.
    Four Friends. An Amended Version, with Historic
    Introduction and Explanatory Notes. Second and ch
    Edition, with Additions and Corrections. Crown 8vo.
  "*One of the most instructive and valuable books that has been
    for many years.*"—SPECTATOR.

Ramsay.—THE CATECHISER'S MANUAL; or, the
    Catechism Illustrated and Explained, for the use of
    Schoolmasters, and Teachers. By the Rev. ARTHUR
    M.A. Second Edition. 18mo. 1*s. 6d.*
  "*A clear explanation of the Catechism, by way of Question and A
  "*This is by far the best Manual on the Catechism we have ev.*
    —ENGLISH JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.

Simpson.—AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY O
    CHRISTIAN CHURCH. By WILLIAM SIMPS...
    Fifth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s. 6d.*

Swainson.—A HANDBOOK TO BUTLER'S ANALO